



Gc  
974.1  
P79e  
1770924

M. L<sub>io</sub>

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL  
GENEALOGY COLLECTION

ALLEN COUNTY PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 1833 01083 6994





32  
ENGLISH COLONIZATION IN AMERICA.

---

A

VINDICATION OF THE CLAIMS

OF

SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

AS THE

FATHER OF ENGLISH COLONIZATION IN AMERICA.

BY JOHN A. POOR.

(Delivered before the Historical Societies of Maine, and New York.)



NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

443 and 445 Broadway.

LONDON, 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.

MDCCCLXII.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2014

FIGVRE DE LA TERRE, NEVVE, GRANDE RIVIERE DE CANADA, ET CÔTES DE L'OCEAN EN LA NOUVELLE FRANCE



Ian suelme fecit

I Millot excudit

MARCVS LESCARTOT nunc primum delinãnt publicauit donauit.

Auec privilege du Roy

1770924

F  
841  
.7

Poor, John Alfred, 1808-1871.

English colonization in America. A vindication of the claims of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, as the father of English colonization in America. By John A. Poor. (Delivered before the historical societies of Maine, and New York) New York [etc.] D. Appleton and company, 1862.

144 p. 23<sup>cm</sup>. ~~HF 743 Ballard, Edward, ed. Memorial volume of the Popham celebration in Portland, Me., 1863.~~

INELF CARD

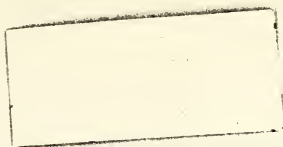
1. Maine—Hist.—Colonial period. 2. Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, 1563?-1647.

1-7929

Library of Congress

F22 B18





<sup>2</sup>  
Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1862,

By JOHN A. POOR,

In the Clerk's office of the District Court of Maine.

3137

N. A. Foster & Co., Print., Portland, Me.





## MAINE HISTORICAL SOCIETY.

At a meeting of the Society, held in the new City Hall Building, Portland, on Wednesday, June 29th, 1859, JOHN A. POOR, Esq., read a paper on "*English Colonization in America*," in which he claimed for Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and his associates, the honor of English colonization on this continent, and disputed the claims set up by the Massachusetts historians, in behalf of the Pilgrims and the Puritans.

R. K. SEWALL, Esq., read a paper on the historical remains at Sheepscot and Sagadahoc, concurring in the views expressed by Mr. Poor as to the claims of the Pilgrims.

Votes of thanks were passed to Messrs. Poor and Sewall.

Extracts from the records.

EDWARD BALLARD,  
*Recording Secretary.*

---

## NEW YORK HISTORICAL SOCIETY.

At a stated meeting of the Society, held at the Library on Tuesday evening, October 4th, 1859:

The paper of the evening was read by Mr. John A. Poor, of Portland, Maine, entitled "*English Colonization in America*."

On its conclusion, Dr. John W. Francis submitted the following resolution, which, after some remarks by Messrs. Henry O'Reilly and Erastus C. Benedict, was adopted.

*Resolved*, That the thanks of the Society be presented to Mr. John A. Poor, for his able and interesting paper read this evening, and that a copy be requested for the Archives, and that the same be referred to the Executive Committee for publication, or such further disposition as they may deem expedient.

Extract from the minutes.

ANDREW WARNER,  
*Recording Secretary.*





## NOTE.

---

The following paper, as now printed, contains several paragraphs omitted for want of time, in the address before the New York Historical Society.

The authorities cited are few, compared with the works examined, having a direct bearing on the question, and confined mainly to such as have not, till recently been easily accessible to the public. The Documents found in the Appendix are such as seemed needful to the correction of the popular history of New England. The persistent efforts of modern writers to prejudice the name of Gorges, from the fact of his strong political and religious attachments to an unpopular sovereign and to an *established church*, ought by this time to cease, as the occasion that originally prompted them, has passed away. The fact that he was a royalist and a churchman would naturally excite the jealous hate of cotemporary rivals of dissenting opinions; but he did not seek to plant the established church of his nation, but *the people of his race*, with organized institutions of government, in the new world. If, as we have attempted to show, it is to him, that the English race owe the colonization of America, it is enough for our purpose; for all admit that he left to each community its choice, in all matters of civil polity, religion, and church government.



## A D D R E S S .

---

Two events, of ever increasing importance, have marked the progress of this continent, destined hereafter to be regarded, as the great epochs of its history—the grant of authority from the British Crown, under which Colonies were planted in America,<sup>1</sup> and the final surrender of the continent to the English race, by the conquest of Canada from France—the former obtained through the efforts of the sagacious and enterprising Sir Ferdinando Gorges, the latter achieved by the heroic valor of Wolfe. France, at one time, dividing with Spain the whole of North America,<sup>2</sup> saw its power broken,

1. See Appendix A.

2. On the evening in which this paper was read in New York, there was presented to the Historical Society, a Spanish Globe, dated 1542, engraved on copper, which shows the boundaries of Florida, and of "*Verrazzin or New France*"—Florida extending as high as the 33<sup>d</sup> north,—New France reaching north to Terra Corterealis. This Globe is one of the most valuable contributions yet made, to the history of North America. It was presented to the Society, by Buckingham Smith, Esq., late Secretary of Legation at Madrid.

Map of the world by Hondius. 1580.



and its dominion in the new world extinguished, when at the charge of the British bayonet, the hitherto invincible columns of Montcalm, broke and fled from the Plains of Abraham, and the morning sunlight of September 18, 1759, revealed to the disappointed soldiers of De Levis, the proud Cross of St. George, floating in triumph over the ancient Citadel of Quebec.<sup>1</sup>

The dominion of a continent was changed by a single encounter, and English institutions are now planted, as the fruits of that victory, over a region of territory greater than all Europe, extending from the northern ocean to the gulf of Mexico, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific seas.

The future of this conquering race, no statesman or philosopher of this day is able to foretell. My purpose is, to trace the earliest practical efforts to plant it in America, and to vindicate the claims of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, the Proprietor of my native State, to the proud title of FATHER OF ENGLISH COLONIZATION IN AMERICA.

The greatness of England is due to her colonization in America. She was but a second rate power at the commencement of the 17th century, till raised to greatness by the iron will of Cromwell. After the destruction of the Dutch fleet, the conquest of Acadia from France in 1654; of Jamaica from Spain in 1655; the establishment of her navigation

1. *Histoire Du Canada*, F. X. Garneau. Vol. i. p. 329.



laws, and her protective policy, she was admitted as an equal, into the community of nations. The Venetians and the Swiss sought the friendship of the Protector. All the northern nations respected his power, and the great Mazarin acknowledged his authority as the lawful sovereign of Great Britain.<sup>1</sup>

The necessity of encouraging the Colonies previously planted in North America, led to the navigation act of Cromwell, in 1651, which was the foundation of the maritime superiority of England. That statute remained for nearly two centuries,<sup>2</sup> and secured to England the entire trade of all her colonies. It stimulated the commercial enterprise of her people. It allowed strangers no importations, unless of their own products in their own vessels. This act fell with crushing weight on the trade of Holland, and left England mistress of the commerce of Europe. The protective policy of Cromwell, also, gradually drew to her own shores the manufactures of Holland and Flanders, and finally those of France after the revocation of the edict of Nantes, by Louis XIV., on the 24th of Oct., 1685. This celebrated edict of Henry IV., in 1598, secured liberty of conscience and perfect toleration to the Protestants of France, with a right to share the public offices; and

1. Heeren's Political History. Vol. i. p. 145 and seq.

2. The navigation Act of 1651 was repealed with the corn laws, June 26, 1846. Ch. 22, 9 and 10 Victoria.





its repeal inflicted a blow on France from which it has never recovered. Over 800,000 of her best people fled from the persecution that followed, most of them to Great Britain and her Colonies. The most skilful artizans of France sought refuge in England, over 50,000 taking up their residence in London. They established the manufacture of silks, jewelry, crystal glasses, and other fine works hitherto unknown in England, but since that time successfully prosecuted throughout the British realms.<sup>1</sup> Such has since, been the increase of the productive power of England, that according to the statement recently made by Lord Brougham in the British Parliament, the machinery of England, at this time employed, in the various branches of industry, equals in effective power, the labor of 800,000,000 of men, an aggregate three-fold greater than the entire laboring population of the globe. Yet England was the latest of all the European powers to encourage its subjects who came to America, by the direct aid of its government, or to take measures to plant its race in the new world. It was not so much the efforts of the government, as the genius of the people, and the enterprise of individuals, that gave to its sons the inheritance of this fair land, where free institutions have developed an expansive energy, that demands for its race, supremacy of the sea and dominion over the land.

1. Anderson's History of Commerce.



1497. The discovery of North America by Sebastian Cabot,<sup>1</sup> in the service of Henry VII., in 1497, seventeen months prior to the time when Columbus saw the mainland of the continent, and the exploration of its coast from latitude 67 deg., 30 m. north, to Florida, has often been urged in modern times, as giving to England claim of title. But it was followed by no act of jurisdiction, or of occupation for nearly a century,<sup>2</sup> while all the other maritime powers of Europe were engaged in schemes of colonization.

1500. Emmanuel, King of the Portuguese, whose subjects, at that time, were the great navigators of Europe, and whose vessels had visited the East, by the way of the Cape of Good Hope, mortified at his neglect of the offer of Columbus, determined to make up for it, by new conquests in the

1. Memoir of Sebastian Cabot, with review of the History of Maritime Discovery. London, 1831.

2. The Government of England was the first to lay down the true doctrine as to the right to newly discovered countries. They distinctly affirmed in 1580, in the reign of Elizabeth, that discovery and prescription are of no avail unless followed by actual occupation. "*Prescriptio sine possessione hand valet.*" Camden, Eliz. Annales, 1580. Hearne's Ed., 1717, p. 360.

"Occupation confers a good title by nature, and the laws of nations." Parl. Debates, 1620-1, p. 250.

Denonvilles' Memoir, on French Limits in America. N. Y. Doc. His. Vol. ix. p 378.

"The first discoverers of an unknown country, not inhabited by Europeans, who plant the arms of their Prince, acquire the property of that country."



new world. He dispatched Gaspar Cortereal<sup>1</sup> to North America in 1500; who described its shores and forests, its stately pines, suitable for masts, &c.

1501. But traffic in slaves, then an established business of the Portuguese, being esteemed the more profitable, he sailed northward, took in, by kidnapping, a cargo of over fifty natives, whom he carried to Europe and sold for slaves.<sup>2</sup> But the Portuguese did not maintain their claim to the country.

1512. Juan Ponce de Leon, in the service of Spain, took possession of Florida in the name of his Sovereign, in 1512; published a map of the country as far north as Newfoundland, and claiming it as a possession of the Spanish Crown. But the Spaniards chiefly sought, at that time, mines of gold and silver, and never extended their occupancy of the country north of Florida, at about 33° north latitude.

1504. France, on the contrary, sent out fishing vessels manned by the Bretons and Normans, to Newfoundland, as early as 1504.<sup>3</sup> Those who

1. The country of Labrador is laid down as "Corterealis," on the Spanish Globe, spoken of in a previous note, and in cotemporary maps of North America.

2. Bancroft, Vol. i., p. 16.

3. RELATIONS DES JESUITES. Contenant ce qui s'est passé de plus remarquable dans Les Missions des pères de la compagnie de Jésus dans la nouvelle France. Ouvrage publié sous les auspices de Gouvernement Canadien, 3 vols., 8 vo., 1838. Quebec. Augustine Coté, Editeur imprimeur. Vol. i. p. 1. Relation 1611.

Documentary History of New York. Vol. ix. pp. 1, 304, 378, 701, 781.





came earliest, named the country first visited, Cape Breton, from their own home. They discovered the Grand Banks of Newfoundland, visited all the creeks and harbors of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, gave names to the localities which they still retain, and published maps of the country.

Jean Denys of Honfleur, made a map on 1506. his return in 1506, and Thomas Aubert, of Dieppe, brought back natives and a plot of the country in 1508. The ocean they crossed was named the sea of the West, 800 leagues broad in its narrowest strait from France. The Western ocean they called the sea of China.<sup>1</sup>

1524. In 1524, Giovanni Verrazzani, a Florentine navigator in the service of Francis I., returned from his last voyage of discovery to America. According to Champlain,<sup>2</sup> he made two voyages to the new world, but we have no narrative from his own pen of more than one. He sailed to the coast of Carolina, in a direct passage, where he found a native population more refined in its manners, than that of any other country of the new world. It had never before been visited by Europeans. Verrazzani, sailing northward, explored the coast, penetrated its various harbors, entered the bay of New York, and spent fourteen days in the harbor of Newport, Rhode Island.

1. Relations Des Jesuites. Vol. i. p. 2. 1611.

2. N. Y. Doc. Hist. Vol. ix. p. 2.





At each place visited, he made acquaintance with the native population, which proved more and more warlike and unamiable as he advanced northward. Following the general line of the shore, he sailed 150 leagues along the coast of Maine, clearly defining that great Bay or Gulf extending from Cape Cod to Cape Sable, known afterward, as the *Bay or Gulf of Maine*.<sup>1</sup> To the entire tract of country never before discovered or frequented by Europeans, he gave the name of *New France*. On reaching the 50th parallel of latitude, he sailed to France, and published a most interesting narrative of his voyage.<sup>2</sup> France in this way established her claims to the country. It was not Cartier, as is commonly asserted, but Verrazzani, that gave the name of New France<sup>3</sup> to the country he discovered, which extended from the 30th to the 50th degree of north latitude. This claim France maintained, and named Carolina for Charles IX. During his reign in 1562, Ribaut built a fort there, which was called *Charles-fort* in honor of the King.<sup>4</sup>

1. Edingburgh Encyclopedia. Vol. xviii. p. 263.

2. New York Historical Collections, vol. i. p. 39, et seq., *new series*, contains the full narration of Verrazzani's voyage, addressed to the French Monarch, translated by J. G. Cogswell, Esq., of the Astor Library.

3. Relations Des Jesuites. Vol. i. p. 14. Champlain, N. York Documents. Vol. ix. p. 1-4. Do. vol. ix. p. 266. Harris' Voyages, Vol. i.

4. Garneau's History of Canada. Vol. i. p. 118.

Curiosity has been awakened the past, year in regard to the location of Charles-fort from the naval and military expedition to the same



It is a singular fact that neither Spain, France or England had furnished up to this time, any great navigator in the discovery of America. They were all Italians; Columbus a Genoese, Cabot a Venetian,<sup>1</sup> and Verrazzani a Florentine.

The French Monarch, following out his 1534 plans for the colonization of America, sent out Jacques Cartier in 1534, who, sailing from St. Malo on April 20, with two ships and 122 men, on May 10th, 1534, came in sight of Bonavista, Newfoundland, a spot discovered by Cabot in 1497.

In the "Relations of the Jesuits," recently published under the patronage of the Government of Canada, it is stated, that Cartier had been on this coast ten years before,<sup>2</sup> and it is fair to conjecture that he was in the expedition of Verrazzani. But we find no other account of any such voyage. Cartier was most fortunate in his expedition. He

region, under command of Commodore Dupont and Gen. Sherman. No traces of the old fort have yet been found, by those in the army of the Beaufort expedition. Gen. Peter Force of Washington, whose authority is most valuable, places the site of Charles-fort on the north side of St. Helen's Island.

1. John Cabot, the father of Sebastian, undoubtedly was a Venetian. There is much evidence lately brought to light, tending to prove that Sebastian Cabot was born in Bristol. In Grafton's *Chronicles of England*, page 1323, we find the following notice of Cabot of Bristol: "A native of that city, but who with his father removed to Venice at the age of four years."

Sebastian Cabot, son of a merchant of Cathay, in London. Eden, 249.

Eden says, "Sebastian Cabot told me he was born at Bristol, and at four years of age went to Venice." Page 255.

2. Vol. i. p. 2.



found the localities of the Gulf of St. Lawrence already known to the fishermen, having the names they now bear. He sailed around Newfoundland, took possession in various places, both on the main land and the island of Newfoundland. Taking with him two young natives of Gaspé, by their full consent, he sailed for France and reached St. Malo on the 5th day of September, 1534.<sup>1</sup>

1535. The report of Cartier's voyage and discoveries, excited great curiosity and interest; and with a more ample equipment in three ships, provided at the Royal expense, he sailed on another expedition for the new world on the 19th of May, 1535, carrying back to America his two young savages, who became useful as interpreters to the natives.

Cartier on this voyage sailed up the Gulf and into the river St. Lawrence, where he spent the following winter at the fortified town of Hochelaga, to which he gave the name it still bears, *Montreal*.<sup>2</sup>

1536. The next spring, erecting the cross in the name of his Sovereign at various points, and taking with him the Chief of the savages at Quebec, Donacana, and his two young interpreters, he returned to France on the 6th of July, 1536.

1. Cartier's Voyages.  
Garneau's History of Canada.

2. Cartier's Voyages. Garneau's History. Vol. i. p. 21.





He made his third voyage in 1540, but no new discoveries were made ; and for nearly fifty years, the more northern portions of North America were apparently forgotten by the Governments of both France and England.

Spain, at that time the great European power, subjugated to her dominion, and planted colonies in the rich countries of tropical and southern America, held the Gulf of Mexico, and Florida to the 30th parallel of latitude.

The spirit of adventure had only led the French and English to take fish in the northern seas, and fur and timber from the coast of Maine—though the coast of America, from Labrador to the Equator, was accurately delineated on maps published in Europe within fifty years of its first discovery by Columbus. The French sent Ribaut, in 1562, to Florida, and joined with him Laudonniere, in 1564 but no results of importance came of these expeditions, as the French were driven out by the Spaniards.

The French asserted their right to the country north of Florida, for nearly one hundred years after its discovery, previous to any substantial claim to it being set up on the part of England.

The first act of the British Parliament, concerning America, was passed in the second year of the reign of Edward VI., in 1548, entitled "an act against the exaction of money, or other





dues, for licence to traffic into Iceland, Newfoundland," &c.<sup>1</sup>

1577. England seemed more intent on religious disputes than on the extension of her dominions in America, during the reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., and Mary. No returns of the English fishery are found prior to 1577. Those of the French date back to 1527—three years after the expedition of Verrazzani. In 1577 there were found one hundred and fifty French fishing vessels on the coast of Newfoundland, engaged in the cod-fishery, and only fifty English ones.

1578. The heroic exploits of Drake, the first Englishman that circumnavigated the globe—who, sailing on this voyage from Plymouth, Nov. 15, 1577, returned to the same port, Sept. 26, 1580—and the *Discourse* of Sir Humphrey Gilbert, “to prove a passage by the north west to *Cathaia*,” printed in 1576, had filled the youthful mind of England with enthusiasm for noble undertakings, and stimulated the ambition of all classes; and Sir Humphrey Gilbert led the way in the plans of colonizing the new world. He obtained from Queen Elizabeth a charter “for planting our people in America,” June 11, 1578, in the 20th year of her reign. Under this grant, he took possession of Newfoundland, and planted the city of St. John, in the presence of thirty Europeans, of various nations—fishermen, who

1. Statutes at large.



accidentally, but not unfrequently, assembled in that secure seaport, at that early day. This port, long after this, retained the name of "the English port," and is so mentioned by the historian L'Escarbot, in his history of the voyage of De Monts to Acadia, in 1604.

But the loss of Sir Humphrey Gilbert, at sea, proved fatal to his plans, and it was some years before Newfoundland became a permanent settlement, or colony.<sup>1</sup>

In 1584, the Queen granted letters patent for the planting of a colony in Virginia to the gallant and accomplished Sir Walter Raleigh, whose heroic efforts for the honor of his country, and whose melancholy fate, excite at this day, the sympathy of all generous minds. But the first colony he transported to Virginia, returned—the second, perished by some unknown means; and thus was reserved for another, the glory of *first* planting the Saxo-Norman race in the new world.<sup>2</sup>

1. John Guy was sent out as Governor of Newfoundland in 1610, and began the Colony at Conception Bay. (*Purchase*.)

The Newfoundland Colony is the oldest of the present Colonies of Great Britain.

2. Since the writing of this paper, a work of great interest to the student of English history has been undertaken, "A CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS." Edited by W. Noel Sainsbury. London, 1860. Longman, Green, Longman & Roberts." It is sub-divided into three great branches, or divisions—"Domestic," "Colonial," and "Foreign." The first volume of each, is already published. That containing an



Such is, in brief, the history of European  
1600. attempts at colonization in North America, to the close of the sixteenth century. There was not an European settlement from Florida to the Northern Ocean. Two hundred and fifty years ago, England, a second rate power in Europe, had not a colonial possession on the globe. France and Holland were then the great maritime nations; and well did Sir Ferdinando Gorges say in the House of Com-

abstract of colonial documents, embraces the period from 1574 to 1660, from which we condense the following, viz:

1. 1574. Points stated in reference to proposed efforts to plant settlements in the northern parts of America. Petition to the Queen, dated March 22, 1574, to allow of an enterprise for the discovery of sundry rich and unknown lands "*fatally reserved for England, and for the honor of your Majesty.*" Endorsed, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Sir Geo. Peckham, Mr. Carlile, and Sir Richard Grenville. p. 1.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert's commission and charter are dated June 11, 1578.

2. 1580. Fragment of a report of persons who had travelled in America, with John Barros, Andrew Thevett, and John Walker. Sir Humphrey Gilbert did confer in person. In 1580, John Walker and his company discovered "a silver mine within the river Norumbega." p. 2.

1600. Consideration on "a proposition for planting an English colony in the northwest of America. If the Prince would assist it, in part, his Majesty's merchants go liberally into it—the country be stirred to furnish men; some gentlemen moved to be adventurers, and a worthy general chosen, qualified to judge by sight, of the strength of the places; it might be a glorious action for our Prince and country, honorable for the general welfare, and adventurers, and in time profitable." p. 4.

(This paper bears internal evidence, that Sir Ferdinando Gorges was its author.)

1603, Nov. 8. Copy of patent by the French King to De Monts, of Acadia, from the 40th<sup>o</sup> to the 46th<sup>o</sup> of north latitude. p. 4.

(The early filing of this copy in the British State Paper office, shows how complete was the information of the government as to the movements of the French towards colonizing the New World.)

1606, April 10. Grant of charter to Geo. Popham and als. by King Charles, from 34<sup>o</sup> to 45<sup>o</sup>. p. 5. (See Appendix A.)

1607, March 9. Ordinance enlarging the number, and augmenting the authority of the council for the two several colonies and plantations





mons, when called on to show why he should not surrender the charter of New England, "*That so valuable a country could not long remain unpossessed, either by the French, Spaniard, or Dutch, but for his efforts here to settle a flourishing plantation.*"<sup>1</sup>

The throne of England was filled by Elizabeth, from 1558 to 1603. That of France from 1589 to 1610, by the liberal-minded and chivalric Henry IV., who of all the Sovereigns of his time, seems most fully to appreciate the importance of American colonization.

In the autumn of 1602, an expedition was fitted out by the merchants of Rouen, under charge of Seigneur du Pont Gravé, of St. Malo, and in the early part of 1603, Henry sent Champlain,<sup>2</sup> the great French navigator, to the St. Law-

in Virginia and America. Thirty members for the first colony, from 34° to 41° north latitude; and ten members for the second colony, between 38° and 45° north latitude.

1607, March 13. Letter of Gorges to Challong. (See later note.)

1607, Dec. 13. Geo. Popham to King James. Maine Hist. Coll. Vol. v. p. 341.

1613, Oct. 18-28. Montmorency Admiral of France to King James. Complains of Argall at Mt. Desert. Requests compensation, &c.

The following are found in the Calendar of "Domestic State Papers:"

1603, July 26. Warrant, &c., to N. Parker, (Warrant Book, p. 102.) take possession of the office and papers of Sir Ferdinando Gorges on his suspension from office.

1603, Sept. 15. Warrant to pay 56s. per annum to Sir F. Gorges, who is restored to his former post of Captain of the new fort at Plymouth. (Warrant Book, fol. 18.)

1608. Letter. Sir F. G. to Thomas Gamel of Salisbury. Escape of Challoner (Challong) out of Spain. Bad feelings of the Spaniards towards the English.

1609, July 31. Warrant to deliver Ordnance Stores to Sir F. G., Captain of the forts at Plymouth Island.

1. Gorges' Brief Narration. Maine Hist. Coll. Vol. ii. p. 36.

2. Champlain's Voyages, p. 40, edit., 1632.



rence, who visited on his return from Quebec, Gaspè, the Bay of Chaleur, and the other places occupied by the fishermen in the Gulf. He encountered icebergs of prodigious length, between the 44th and 45th degrees north latitude, and obtained from the savages a description of the St. Lawrence, above Hochelaga.

On the return of Champlain in 1603, Henry 1603. ry had granted to Pierre du Gas, Seigneur De Monts, a French Protestant, and a member of his household, all that part of North America lying between the 40th and 46th parallels of north latitude, and confirmed it by letters patent, Nov. 8th, 1603.<sup>1</sup>

In this grant the King says, "fully confiding in your great prudence, and in the knowledge you possess of the quality, condition, and situation of the said country of Acadia, from the divers voyages, travels, and visits you have made into these parts, and others neighboring and circumjacent, &c., &c., we do appoint you our Lieut. General, to represent our person in the country, coasts and confines of Acadia, from the 40th to the 46th degree of latitude." The design was, *the occupancy of the country.*

De Monts sailed from Havre De Grace, 1604. March 17, 1604, with two vessels, in one of

1. L'Escarbot Histoire de la nouvelle France, 1609.

Champlain's Voyages (Ed. 1632,) p. 44.

Hazard's Coll. Vol. i. p. 45.

Williamson's History of Maine. Vol. i. app.

Sainsbury's Calender of Colonial State Papers. Vol. i. p. 4.



which, Capt. Timothy, of New Haven, Master, were De Monts, Champlain, Poutrincourt, and the accomplished scholar and historian L'Escarbot.<sup>1</sup> In the other, commanded by Capt. Morell, of Honfleur, was Du Pont Gravé the companion and associate of De Monts. They called at Isle Sablon, and reached the coast May 16, 1604, where they found a ship trading with the natives contrary to the di-

1. L'Escarbot's History of New France, is by far the most valuable of all the works on America of that date. His first edition, published in 1608-'9, 12 mo., contained a map of the country explored, a copy of which we give. This work was translated into English, and published by P. Erondelle, London, in 1609, as an original work without any allusion to the author. A 2d edition was published in Paris in 1612, under the following title, which we translate from the copy recently placed in the Astor Library.

"HISTORY OF NEW FRANCE,

Containing the Voyages, Discoveries and Settlements made by the French, in the West Indies and New France, with the consent and authority of our Most Christian King, and the diverse fortunes of those engaged in the execution of these things, from a hundred years ago, till to-day.

*In which is comprised the History, Moral, Natural and Geographical, of the said Province: with the Tables and Pictures of the same.*

By MARC L'ESCARBOT, Lawyer in Parliament; Eye Witness of a part of the things here recited.

. *Multa renascentur qua iam occidere cadent que.*

P A R I S:

JOHN MILLOT, in front of St. Bartholomew with the three crowns, and in his shop, on the steps of the great hall of the Palace.  
1612.

WITH PATENT FROM THE KING."

In the Library of Congress is a copy of the 3d Edition, published at Paris, in 1627.

The Dutch and the French adopted the names of the rivers and places given them by De L'Escarbot.

I am aware that Warburton and others assert, that L'Escarbot came out in the 2d Expedition in the ship IONAS, in 1606; but I find nothing to justify this statement from his own writings.



rections of the King, which they seized and confiscated, giving the master's name, Rossignol, to the Port; his only return for the voyage. The port is now called Liverpool, but a Lake in the interior still bears the name of the unlucky master.

Exploring the coast westward, De Monts reached port Mouton, where they landed, waiting the arrival of Du Pont Gravé. The company of Planters, those who designed to remain in the country, was one hundred in number, and here they erected tents, and planted the ground with grain, which two years later, was found bearing a good crop.

Champlain, impatient at the delay, proceeds west in a shallop, explored the coast, and discovered the beautiful island, which he named St. Croix — from the fact, that just above it, the streams formed a natural cross, one on each side, entering at right angles with the main river — which river finally retained the name of St. Croix, or Holy Cross, and now divides New Brunswick from Maine. Champlain rejoined his companions at Port Mouton, after exploring as far west as the Penobscot.

On the arrival of Du Pont Gravé and Captain Morell, both ships sailed west, entered the Bay St. Marie, discovered the Bay of Fundy, then sailing north, reached Port Royal.

Poutrincourt, who came out to select for himself a place of settlement, was so delighted with Port Royal, that he solicited, and obtained from De Monts





a promise of a grant of it, and with Du Pont Gravé, returned to France, in the autumn of 1604, to arrange for his removal to this country, and for a fresh supply of planters.

Under the advice of Champlain, De Monts' company proceeded west, discovered the river St. John, followed the coast westward, and planted themselves in the spot he had selected, known at this day as Neutral Island, in the St. Croix river, within the limits of the State of Maine. This was the first settlement of Europeans north of Florida. Here they laid out a town, and planted the ground. During the autumn of 1604, habitations were erected, a fort built, a magazine constructed, and a chapel finished.<sup>1</sup>

1. "Leaving the river St. John, they came, following the coast twenty leagues, to a great river—properly a sea—where they fortified themselves in a little Island, seated in the midst of this river, that the said Lord Champlain had been to reconnoitre; and seeing it strong by nature, and easily guarded; and in addition, seeing that the season was beginning to pass, and the necessity of seeking a lodging without going further, they resolved to stop there.

"The Island of St. Croix is difficult to find for one who has not been there—there are so many Islands and great bays to pass, before reaching it. \* \* \* \* \*

"There are three or four mountains high above the others on the sides, but on the side of the north, from which the river descends, is a pointed one, two leagues distant. The woods of the main land handsome, and the grass likewise. There are streams of fresh water, very agreeable, opposite the Island, where several of the people of De Monts made their home, and had built cabins there. The said Island is about half a league in circuit, and at the end of the side towards the sea, there is a mount, or small hill, and like a separate Island, where we placed the cannon of Lord De Monts; and there also the chapel, built after the savage fashion.

"At the foot of this, there are some muscles, so many that it is a wonder, which can be picked up at low tide, but they are small.

"Lord De Monts caused the people to work upon his fort, which he had fixed at the end of the Island, opposite that where he had planted



The winter of 1604-'5 was long and severe, 1605. and thirty-five of their number died of the scurvy. In the spring, De Monts, disappointed at the rigor of the winter, seeking a milder climate, proceeded to explore the country west and south, designing to settle four degrees south of St. Croix. He visited Mount Desert, the Penobscot, the Kennebec,<sup>1</sup> Casco,<sup>2</sup> and Saco; and coasted as far south as Cape Malabar, twelve miles south of Cape Cod.

his cannon. This was prudently considered to command all the river, above and below.

"But there was one difficulty. The fort was on the northern side, where there was no shelter, except the trees on the bank of the Island. Without the fort was the lodgings for the Swiss, and other little houses, like a suburb of a city. Some had built cabins on the main land, near the brook. But in the fort was the house, or dwelling, of Lord De Monts, made of good carpenter work, with the flag of France floating above it. On the other side was the magazine, where reposed the safety and life of all—similarly made of good carpenter work, and covered with shingles; and opposite the magazine were the houses of Lord Orville, Champlain, Champdore, and other noble personages, and on the opposite of the dwelling of De Monts, was a covered gallery, for the exercise of play, and for workmen in rainy weather; and between the said fort and the platform where the cannon was, all filled with gardens. Each one amused himself, or worked with a gay heart. All the autumn passed with this, and it was doing well to have lodged ourself, and cleared up the Island before the coming on of the winter."

L'Escarbot, book iv. ch. 4, p. 469—2d edition, 1812.

1. "Sailing west, 1605, to find a place of settlement, they, De Monts, Champlain and Champdore, came to Norumbega, the river of Pentagouet, (Penobscot,) and thence to Kinnibeki, (Kennebec,) which shortens the way to the great river of Canada. There are a number of savages settled there, and the lands begin to be better peopled."

L'Escarbot, book iv. ch. 7, p. 497.

2. "From Kinnibeki, in going farther on, they found the Bay '*Marchin*,' (Portland,) from the captain who commands there."

L'Escarbot, book iv. ch. 15, p. 557.

"In 1606, Pontrincourt arrived at *Marchin*, which is the name of the savage captain, who, on the arrival of the said Pontrincourt, cried *he! he!* To which they replied in the same way. He replied, asking in his language, "*Who are you?*" To which they replied, "*We are friends.*" On the approach of Pontrincourt, he made with him a treaty of friendship, and gave him presents of knives, axes and hatchets, made of pater-nosters, or glass tubes, (*tuyaux*,) white and blue, of which he was



Portland harbor, which he named "Marchin," from the Chief, or Sagamore, who then resided here, and who was killed in 1607, took the name of Machigonne. De Monts sailed into all the bays, harbors, and arms of the sea, from St. Croix to Cape Malabar, a distance of over four hundred leagues, "searching to the bottom of the bays." Saco still retains the name "*Chouaquet*," given to it by De Monts, in 1605. South of "*Pescadouet*," Piscataway, (Portsmouth,) the harbors were less and less satisfactory, and the country less and less inviting; and after reaching Cape Malabar, De Monts despaired of finding a suitable place of settlement, as he had designed. While at Cape Cod, in 1605, they carried on shore a large kettle for cooking, which the Indians seized in the absence of the cook. On discovering the theft, he attempted to rescue it from their hands; but he was slain by them, and the kettle carried off.<sup>1</sup> This was undoubtedly the same kettle that Bradford speaks of, which the Plymouth people found, in their first explorations in 1620.<sup>2</sup>

delighted; also, of the treaty, knowing well that that would make him a great deal of support. He distributed to some of the great number around him, the presents of Lord Poutrincourt, to whom he brought much flesh of deer, to support the company with. Thence they proceeded to Chouaquet, the river of the Captain Olmuchiin, where took place the next war between the Souriquois and the Etchemins.

"This Marchin was killed the year we departed from New France. 1607. Idem."

1. L'Escarbot. p. 498.

2. Bradford's History of Plymouth. Mass. Hist. Soc. Coll. 1856. p. 82.





In the Spring of 1605, Du Pont Gravé arrived at St. Croix with supplies and a reinforcement of forty men, for the colony, which gave great joy. At his suggestion, the establishment was broken up at St. Croix, and they removed to Port Royal. Here, under the advice of L'Escarbot, they cleared and cultivated the lands, and built a mill for the grinding of their corn. Though Port Royal was destroyed by Argall, in 1613, it was rebuilt, and has ever since been peopled. A settlement was made on the St. John, above the Falls, by Du Pont Gravé, and St. Croix was also soon re-occupied.

In 1611, when the Jesuits, Biard, and Masse, visited the Kennebec, for the purchase of grain, but without success, Plastrier, who lived at the Island of St. Croix, gave them, on their return, two hogshheads of beans, which rendered important aid, in supplying Port Royal with food, in the winter of 1611-'12. Four French ships were at that time taking fish, at the White Rock, twenty-two leagues west of St. Croix.

The whole country was familiar to the French fishermen. Champlain, and Champdore the pilot of De Monts, remained four years in the country.

On the return of L'Escarbot to France, he published his invaluable history, with a very accurate map of Acadia, or New France, as far south as Cape Malabar. Acadia became well known throughout



Europe. In 1609, the work of L'Ecsarbot was translated and published in England.<sup>1</sup>

De Monts sailed up the Kennebec river, as is reported, in 1605, in the expectation of reaching Hochelaga, or Montreal, by water, led into this attempt by the reports given him by the Indians. Though claiming the country as far south as the 40th parallel of latitude, there is no evidence that De Monts ever sailed south of, or attempted to extend his jurisdiction south of Cape Malabar. All east of this, was claimed as within the control of France. The country east of French Bay, or the Bay of Fundy, was called ACADIA; between that and Canada, NORUMBEGA.<sup>2</sup>

At the commencement of the 17th century, 1600. the Dutch were the most commercial and the most powerful nation of Europe, if superiority in wealth and enterprise, is to be regarded as the true measure of greatness. Small in territory and inferior in point of numbers to France or England, Holland had grown superior to either in all the arts of civilized life. Tolerant of religious opinion, and enjoying unrestricted commercial freedom, the people of the low countries had accumulated wealth, reclaimed their marshes from the invasions of the sea, and cultivated the arts of peace. Their prosperity excited the jealousy of England, and they

1. See note ante, page 21.

2. Relations of the Jesuits.



were finally compelled to yield to the iron will of the Protector, who infused new life into all pursuits, not only of commerce, but of war.

The people of Holland had learned to practice religious toleration long before those of any other nation, and were the first to recognize the commercial code, or what is commonly called the "Law of nations." They were equally in advance of other powers, in all commercial ideas and undertakings. As early as 1581, the Dutch merchants had established a profitable trade with the West Indies, and in 1597, had a still more lucrative one with the East Indies. In 1600, the realized wealth of Holland surpassed that of France, England or Spain. Her Batavian provinces had yielded abundant returns to her merchants, though following long and tedious voyages around the Cape of Good Hope, and other nations sought to reach the same coveted treasure by a shorter route across the Atlantic, by the long-hoped for *northwest passage* to Cathay. With this view the famous British East India Company was chartered December 31st, 1600, with a capital of £70,000. In 1602, the Dutch East India Company was chartered with vastly greater capital.

An expedition for the colonization of North America was one of the early objects of the Dutch government and people, and they claimed the country from the 41st° to the 45th° of north lati-



tude. Their ship, in command of Henry Hudson, was off the mouth of the Penobscot river, July 18, 1609, and from that year they had actual and permanent possession of *Manatte*, or New York Island. So that France, Holland and England, started almost simultaneously in a career of colonization in the new world.

At this time appeared on the public stage,  
 1603. Sir Ferdinando Gorges. Born 1573, at Ash-ton Philips, in Somersetshire, he became a distinguished naval officer in the Spanish war prior to 1603, when, on the accession of James I., he was made Governor of Plymouth. How early he became interested in the colonization of America, does not quite clearly appear, but being an intimate friend of Sir Walter Raleigh, though 21 years younger, it is fair to suppose that he possessed the same adventurous spirit, and in his "Briefe Narration," speaking in later times of the grant to himself of the *Province of Mayne*, which was dated April 3d, 1639, he says, "Being now seized, of what I had travailed, for *above forty* (40) *years*, together with the expenses of many thousand pounds, and the best time of my age; laden with troubles and vexations from all parts, as you have heard, I will now give you an account in what order I have settled my affairs, in that, my Province of Mayne, with the true form and manner of the Government, ac-





cording to the authority granted me by his Majesty's Royal Charter."

"First. I divided the whole into eight Bailiwicks or Counties, and these again into sixteen, several hundreds, consequently, into Parishes and Tithings as people did increase and the provinces were inhabited," &c.<sup>1</sup>

Gorges speaks in familiar terms, at the commencement of his narrative, of the efforts of Sir Humphrey Gilbert and of Sir Richard Grenville to plant colonies in America, the last of which terminated 1585, so that his mind was evidently familiar, at an early day, with their plans for American Colonization.

It has been recently made to appear that he was directly concerned in the great voyage of George Weymouth, in 1605, regarded as the initial point in the history of New England; and probably, in the previous ones of Gosnold, in 1602,<sup>2</sup> and of Pring, in 1603.

<sup>1</sup> 1. Briefe Narration. Maine Hist. Coll. Vol. ii. p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> 2. Interest has of late been awakened as to the route, and the purposes of Gosnold's voyage, which at this time deserves notice.

On the 26th of March, 1602, Capt. Bartholomew Gosnold, in the 42d year of the reign of Elizabeth, sailed from Falmouth, in the County of Cornwall, for a voyage into the north part of Virginia, in the bark *Concord*, with thirty-two persons on board—twelve of them sailors, and twenty "to remain in the country for population." So that the priority of the English, in efforts to colonize the country, is clearly established.

The country that invited rival efforts at colonization by the Dutch,



The information, recently brought to light by a publication of the Hon. Geo. Folsom, "A Catalogue of Original Documents in the English Archives, relating to the early History of Maine," proves, what

French and English, extended from Cape Breton to the head of Delaware bay.

Of those who came out with Gosnold, who was chief in command, and who died in Virginia in 1607, the only names preserved to us are Bartholomew Gilbert, second officer; John Angel; William Street, ship master; Robert Solterne, who came out with Pring the following year—afterwards a licensed clergyman; John Tucker; John Brereton, gentleman, and journalist of the voyage; James Rosier, the journalist of Weymouth's voyage in 1605, and Gabriel Archer, gentleman, and also journalist of the voyage, who subsequently went to Virginia.

The land-fall of Gosnold is thus described by Archer:

"On Friday, the fourteenth of May, early in the morning, we made the land, being full of fair trees—the land somewhat low—certain hammocks, or hills, lying into the land; the shore full of white sand, but very stony, or rocky. And standing fair along by the shore, about twelve of the clock the same day, we came to an anchor, where eight Indians, in a Biscay shallop, with mast and sail, and iron grapple, and a kettle of copper, came boldly aboard us; one of them appparelled with a waistcoat and breeches of black serge, made after our sea-fashion; hose and shoes on his feet; all the rest (saying one that had a pair of breeches of blue cloth) were naked. These people are of tall stature, broad and grim visage; of a black swart complexion; the eyebrows painted white; their weapons are bows and arrows. It seemed, by some words and signs they made, that some basques of St. John de Luz, have fished or traded in this place, being in the latitude of 43 degrees.

"But riding here, in no very good harbor, and withal doubting the weather, about three of the clock the same day in the afternoon, we weighed, and standing southerly off into the sea the rest of that day, and the night following, with a fresh gale of wind; in the morning, we found ourselves embayed within a mighty headland," &c.

This headland was Cape Cod, a name given to it by Gosnold, from the abundance of cod taken there, and which it still retains, despite the efforts of subsequent voyagers and writers, to affix to it the name of Cape James, in honor of the King.

John Brereton, the fellow passenger and historian of the voyage, thus describes Gosnold's land-fall:

"The 13th day, we landed in seventy fathoms, and observed great beds of weeds, much woods, and divers things close floating by us, when



was before only a matter of conjecture, that Gorges was the chief promoter of Weymouth's voyage. In Gorges' letter, on file in the State Paper Office, published in full by Mr. Folsom, dated March 13,

as we find smelling of the shore as from some southern cape and Andalusia in Spain.

"The 14th, about six o'clock in the morning, we discovered land, that lay north, and the northerly part we called the Northland, in which to another rock, upon the same, lying twelve leagues west, that we called Savage rock; for six leagues toward the said rock is an outpoint of rising ground, the trees thereof were high and straight from the rock, east northeast.

"But finding ourselves short of our purposed place, we set sail westward, leaving them and their coast about sixteen leagues S. W.; from thence we perceived in that course two small Islands, the one lying eastward from Savage rock, the other to the southward of it. The coast we left was full of goodly lands, fair plains, with little green round hills above the cliffs, appearing unto us.

"The 15th day we had again sight of the land, which made ahead; being, as thought, an Island," &c.

This proved to be Cape Cod.

From these accounts, Dr. Belknap supposed Savage rock to be on the northerly shore of Massachusetts Bay, about Nahant. Drake, in his elaborate history of Boston, expresses the belief that "Savage rock" was in the vicinity of Great Boar's Head, in Hampton, and that Gosnold's land-fall was at Boon Island, on the Isle of Shoals, from the fact that they are nearer to the 43° of latitude than any Island on the coast.

The late John McKeen, Esq., of Brunswick, a thorough and accurate observer and explorer, in a paper read before the Maine Historical Society, exposes the errors of modern writers, and shows that the statement of Strachey, that Gosnold's land-fall was at the mouth of the Sagadahoc, is the true one. Strachey was a cotemporary, and undoubtedly wrote with the narrations of Archer and Brereton before him; and in constant intercourse with those who shared this adventurous voyage.

R. K. Sewall, Esq., in his able work, "Ancient Dominions in Maine," concurs in fixing the land-fall of Gosnold at Sagadahoc.

Mr. McKeen sums up the case in the following brief statement:

"The bark Concord, Capt. Gosnold, sailed from Falmouth, England, on the 26th of March, O. S., 1602, and on the 14th of April, had sight of the Island of St. Mary, one of the Azores. On the 23d of April, they were in north latitude 37°. On the 7th of May, they first saw birds of various kinds, which was an indication that they were approaching the land. On the 9th of May, they were near north latitude 43°. On





1607, addressed to Mr. Chalinge (Challong) he speaks of the return of the former voyage, of *but*

the 12th of May, they had the "smell of land," by which it was likened they were not far from it. But on the 14th, being in north latitude  $43^{\circ}$ , pursuing their course westerly, *at six o'clock in the morning*, they discovered land, which lay directly north from the ship, and which Strachey says was "land about Sagadahock." Pursuing their course westerly, they observed the land full of fair trees, and somewhat low; certain hammocks, or hills, lying into the land; the shores full of white sand, but very stony, or rocky. They had not proceeded far, when they discovered land ahead, over the starboard bow. This point of land called by the natives *Semiamis*, and by the English, Cape Elizabeth, after the name of the reigning queen. Finding this land not what was expected, "being short of their proposed place," they named it *Northland*, and pursued their course. From Cape Elizabeth, they veered a little south, and now commenced estimating their distances. They continued their course a fair distance from the land, till they came opposite an out-point of wooded land; the trees tall and straight. The distance from Cape Elizabeth they estimated at five leagues. This point is now called on our maps, "*Fletcher's Point*." It is situated near Saco, and the estimated distance from the Cape is very nearly correct.

"From this point, they shaped their course W. S. W., and sailed seven leagues to a great rock in the land, where they came to an anchor. This rock they called *Savage Rock*, and it is now named on our maps, *York Nubble*."

"This, likewise, corresponds to the course and distance as now estimated on the maps. I am indebted for the two last suggestions to a communication in the *Temperance Journal* (a newspaper printed in Portland) of January, 1859, which was over the signature of '*Rockport*'"

"To this place, 'the great rock in the land,' the Concord arrived at twelve o'clock at noon, having sailed from six o'clock in the morning, from the first point discovered, bearing north to this place about forty-eight miles. This rock was called *Savage Rock*."

The opinion that the land-fall of Gosnold was upon the coast of Maine, between Monhegan and Cape Elizabeth, is strongly confirmed by the fact that Pring in his voyage the next year with Robert Salterne as a companion, followed the same general direction. He followed the track of Gosnold, having on board some of Gosnold's party. Pring came in sight of land further east, between  $43^{\circ}$  and  $44^{\circ}$  of latitude, at the mouth of the Penobscot Bay, and gave the name of Fox Islands to the group still bearing the name, from the fact of taking a silver-grey fox upon it. The only objection to this theory is the supposition that this rock was found in the precise latitude  $43^{\circ}$ , which would bring them into the neighborhood of the Isle of Shoals, or Boon Island. But the intelligent reader will perceive from the language as quoted from Archer, that the place "where the Basques fished" was in  $43^{\circ}$ —a loose form of expression as applied to a fishing region, extending indefinitely for a con-



*the five savages,"* whom Weymouth took as "*the chief*  
*return* TO US, WHO FIRST, sent to the coast."<sup>1</sup>

siderable space along the coast. There is reason to suppose they were not particular in determining the exact latitude of the places named, from the fact, that their place fixed on for settlement, Elizabeth Isle, is

1. 1607, Mar. 13. Plymouth. Letter of Sir Ferdinando Gorges to Mr. Chalinge.

Mr. Chalinge — I received your lre sent me by the Mr. Nicholas Hines by whom I rest satisfied for your pte of the proceedinge of the voyadge and I doubt not but you willbe able to answer the expectacon of all your freindes. I hoope you shall receive verie shortlie, if alreadie you have not, an attestation out of the highe Courte of Admiraltie to give satisfacon of the truthe of our intent, yt sett you out, let me advise you to take heede that you be not ov'shott in acceptinge recompence for wrongs received, for you know that the journey hath bene noe smale chardge to us, *yt first sent to the Coast and had for our returne but the five salvages whereof two of the principal you had with you and since within in two months after your deptime we sent out an other shippe to come to your supplie, and now again we have made a nue preparacon of divers others, all of wch through your misfortune is likely to be frustrate and our time and chardge lost, therefore your demands must be answerable herenunto, and accordinglye seeke for satisfacon which cannot be lesse than five thousande poundes and therefore before you conclude for lesse attende to receive for resolucon from hence, if they answere you not thereafter, for if their condicon be not such as shallbe reasonable, we do know howe to right ourselves, for rather then we will be loasers a penny by them we will attend a fitter time to gott us our content, and in the mean time leave all in their hands, therefore be you careful herein, and remember y<sup>t</sup> it is not the buisness of merchants or rovers but as you knowe of men of another ranke and such as will not preferre manie complayntes nor exhibite divers petitions for that they understande a shorter way to the woode, soe comendinge you to God and continuing my selfe*

your most assured and lovinge friende  
 Ferdinando Gorges

Plymoth 13 of  
 Marche 1607

Postscript

I pray you use the meanes that the salvages and the companie be sent over with as much speede as is possible and yt you hasten yourself away if you see not likelihooode of a present ende to be had for we will not be tired with their dekaies and endlessse suites such as commonlie they use but leave all to time and God the just revenger of wrongs

Ferdinando Gorges

(Endorsed)

The Copie of Sr. Ferdinando Gorges his lre to Mr. Chalens.

Received ye 6 day."

An abstract of this letter is given in the "Calender of State Papers."  
 See note, page 19.



This voyage of Weymouth was nominally undertaken to find the long sought for north-west passage to India, and "as set forth" by the Earl of Southampton, and Arundell, Lord Wardour. But this was undoubtedly a pretence to mislead the French who claimed the country, and were at this time, occupying the territory, and coasting along the shores of Maine. De Monts and Weymouth were in the same waters in 1605.<sup>1</sup>

Weymouth sailed from the Thames, March 1605. 31, 1605, explored the coast of Maine, and west as far as Nantucket.

As Weymouth had been familiar with the coast in a previous naval service of twelve years, and knew that any idea of finding, by this route, a north-west passage to India, was absurd, the con-

put down by the same authority — Brereton — as in latitude  $41^{\circ} 10'$ , when it is found to be many minutes north of that point. We think the evidence fully establishes the fact we assume, that Gosnold's land-fall was at Sagadahoc; that on the 13th day of May, 1602, he sighted the Islands from Seguin to Cape Elizabeth, and gave to the latter, the name it still bears, in honor of his Queen,—that the name of Falmouth, subsequently adopted for the site of the present city of Portland, was so affixed in compliment to the port from which the first voyage of exploration sailed. It was a favorite idea with the English, from the first, to give the name of their former home, or their place of embarkation, to the places visited in the new world, as in case of Bristol, Plymouth, Falmouth, Yarmouth, Portsmouth, Dartmouth, York, Wells, &c. The French, on the contrary, generally adopted the local names of the country, attempting to express in language, the sounds gathered from the lips of the natives.

1. Weymouth's voyage. Mass. Hist. Coll. Vol. viii. 3d Series, p. 125.





clusion is inevitable, that Weymouth's voyage was designed to lay the foundation of the Royal Grant, which secured the Continent to Great Britain. In fact, Weymouth proposed to plant a Colony, and Owen Griffin and another man had agreed to remain.

A most interesting discussion is now going on by many able writers in Maine, as to the river visited by Weymouth, and which of the noble harbors of that wonderful coast, was the Pentecost harbor, in which he anchored his ship Archangel, in 1605.<sup>1</sup>

Weymouth carried back to England, in 1605, five natives of Pemaquid, from whom Gorges obtained full "particulars of its stately islands, and safe harbors, what great rivers ran up into the land, what men of note were seated on them, what power they were of, how allied, what enemies they had, and the like."<sup>2</sup>

By his glowing descriptions of the beauties of the country, he satisfied the Royal inquiry, and laid

1. Gorges calls the river Pemaquid; but the river, at this time, bearing that name, does not answer to the descriptions of Weymouth's narrative. It is a historical and geographical question, of interest, and we are gratified in being able to say, that an accurate exploration of these localities is to be made by the officers of the United States' Coast Survey, when on duty in that region; and that Professor Bache, its accomplished Superintendent, with the consent of the Government, has agreed to place a steamer of his command at the service of the Maine Historical Society for this purpose.

2. Gorges' Narration, p. 17.





the foundation for the subsequent grant from the King.<sup>1</sup>

It was through the efforts of Gorges that 1606. King James made the Royal Grant or Charter, dated April 10, 1606, granting to "the Council of Virginia" the Continent of North America, from the 34th to the 45th degrees of north latitude, and all the Islands within one hundred miles of the shore.

Sir Ferdinando Gorges and the Earl of Southampton petitioned the King for this Charter, but no copy of this interesting Document has as yet been brought to light.

The attacks on Sir Ferdinando Gorges, for "grasping cupidity," in obtaining charters from King James, and the Stuarts, are among the striking evidences of the intolerance of the times. He, or any one, who would sacrifice his private fortune, to establish plantations in America, deserved the gratitude of the nation, and the warmest commendations of modern times. Instead of this, the historians of New England—those even, of our times, or such as follow Puritan authorities, unjustly represent Gorges as a man of a selfish and grasping spirit, whose only ambition was private advantage.

The grants to Sir Humphrey Gilbert, and to Sir Walter Raleigh, by Elizabeth, were as obnoxious to the charge of monopoly, as those subsequently

1. See Appendix A.



given to Sir Ferdinando Gorges and his associates, which the Puritans attacked; but no complaint was made against Elizabeth, for these grants; although others lavishly bestowed by her, in various departments of trade and manufactures, were boldly attacked by the Commons. The Queen, with instinctive sagacity, yielding to their demands—revoked the grants, and thanked the Commons for their zeal in the public welfare.

This charter of April 10, 1606, is the foundation of the title of England to North America. It was followed up by immediate acts of jurisdiction and possession.

In May, 1606, the Lord Chief Justice of England, Sir John Popham, having become associated in the enterprise, sent out Captain Haines, "in a tall ship belonging to Bristol and the river Severne, to settle a plantation in the river of Sagadahoc," but from the failure of the master to follow the course ordered, the ship fell into the hands of the Spaniards, by capture, and the expedition failed of success.<sup>1</sup>

In August, of the same year, a ship, sent out by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, under command of Henry Challong, with two savages as pilots, for the same purpose—the two designed to form one expedition—shared a similar fate.<sup>2</sup>

Another vessel, sent by the Chief Justice, in

1. Strachey, p. 290, vol. iii. Me. His. Coll.

2. Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 19.



command of Hanam, under charge of Martin Pring as master, sailed two months later, reached the coast of Maine; but not finding Challong, made a perfect discovery of all the rivers and harbors, and brought back a most exact description of the coast; which so encouraged the company that they determined to send out a greater number of planters, with better provisions for the planting of a colony at Sagadahoc, the next year.

In consequence of these mishaps, Virginia was occupied prior to Maine. The expedition of Capt. Newport, to the Chesapeake, which sailed December 19, 1606, landed at Jamestown, May 13, 1607.

On the 31st of May, 1607, the first Colony <sup>1607.</sup> to New England, sailed from Plymouth for the Sagadahoc, in two ships — one, called the "*Gift of God*," whereof George Popham, brother of the Chief Justice, was commander; the other, the "*Mary and John*," whom Raleigh Gilbert commanded — on board which ships were one hundred and twenty persons for planters. They came to anchor under an Island, supposed to be Monhegan, the 31st of July, and in two hours after, eight savages in European apparel, came to them from the shore in a Spanish shallop, and after rowing about the vessels awhile, boldly came on shipboard, where three of them stayed all night. The next day the others returned with three women, in another Biscay shallop, bringing beaver skins, for the purpose of trade,





so familiar had those people become with the habits and designs of their European visitors.

The fish of Monhegan were already more esteemed than those of Newfoundland, and this spot was the common resort of all the trading vessels on the coast. By this means, undoubtedly, the Indians became possessed of French and Spanish shallops prior to 1607.

After exploring the coast and Islands, on Sunday, the 9th of August, 1607, they landed on an Island they called St. George, where they had a sermon delivered unto them by Mr. Seymour, their preacher, and returned aboard again. On the 15th of August, they anchored under Seguin, and on that day the "Gift of God" got into the river of Sagadahoc. On the 16th, both ships got safely in, and came to anchor. On the 17th, in two boats, they sailed up the river—Captain Popham in his pinnace, with thirty persons, and Captain Gilbert in his long boat, with eighteen persons, and "found it a very gallant river; many good Islands therein, and many branches of other small rivers falling into it," and returned. On the 18th, they all went ashore, and there made choice of a place for their plantation, at the mouth, or entry, of the river, on the west side, (for the river bendeth towards the nor-east and by east,) being almost an Island, of good bigness, in a province called by the Indians "Sabino"—so called of a Sagamo, or chief commander, under the grand



bashaba. On the 19th, they all went ashore, where they had made choice of their plantation, and where they had a sermon delivered unto them by their preacher, and after the sermon, the President's commission was read, with the laws to be observed and kept.

George Popham, gent., was nominated President.

Captain Raleigh Gilbert,

James Davies,

Richard Seymour, Preacher,

Captain Richard Davies,

Captain Harlowe,

were all sworn assistants; and so they returned back again.

Thus commenced the first occupation and settlement of New England, and from which date, the title of England to the new world was maintained.<sup>1</sup>

1. The charter of De Monts was revoked by the King, in 1607, on account of the intense jealousy of his rivals. This loss of title by the French, allowed the English charter of April 10, 1606, to take precedence of all French grants.

In all subsequent contests with rival nations, the Dutch and the French, the occupation by the Popham colony, in 1607, was put forward as the ground of title. In 1632, the Dutch West India Company, in their address to the States' General, under date of May 5th, say:

"In the year 1606, his Majesty of Great Britain granted to his subjects under the names of New England and Virginia, north and south of the river, (Manhattoes,) on express condition that the companies should remain one hundred miles apart. Whereupon the English began about the year 1607 to settle by the river of Sagadahoc. The English place New England between 41° and 45° of north latitude."

Holland Doc., N. Y., p. 51.



This act of formal possession of the country under their charter, August 29, 1607, was the consummation of England's title to New England, and the foundation of her future greatness, and the day

The Dutch contended that they had the right to occupy the one hundred miles, reserved by the charter as open territory.

Count De Tillieres, French Ambassador, writing to Secretary Conway, under date of April, 1624, admits the claim of England to Virginia and to the Gulf of Mexico, south five hundred leagues; but denies all right north. In answer to Tillieres, the charter of King James, in 1606, to the two companies is quoted to show that the claim of both is equally valid.

Calender of Colonial State Papers, i. p. 60.

In 1631, Champlain, in his great Memoir to the King, giving a statement of the rival claims of the French and English, says:

"King James issued his charter twenty-four years ago, for the country from the 33d° to the 45th°. England seized the coast of New France, where lies Acadia, on which they imposed the name of New England."

French Doc. N. Y., vol. ix, pp. 1 and 2.

In 1630, September 9th, the Scotch adventurers addressed a letter to the King, from the Council of Scotland—those claiming title under the grant to Sir William Alexander, afterwards Lord Stirling—in which they assert that "the planting of New England in the north," was by Chief Justice Popham.

Cal. of Colonial State Papers, i., p. 119.

In a work entitled "An Encouragement to Colonies," by William Alexander Knight, printed by William Stanly, London, 1625, it is said:

"One of them, Sir John Popham, sent the first company that went, of purpose to inhabit there, near to Sagadahoc." p. 30.

Capt. John Mason, writing to Sir Edward Coke, Secretary of State, under date of April 2, 1632, says:

"Plantations in New England have been settled about twenty-five years." London Doc., N. Y., vol. iii, p. 16.

In the work of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, grandson of the original proprietor of Mayne, entitled "A Description of New England,—America Painted to the Life," published in London, in 1659, he says:

"New England is between 41° and 45° of north latitude. In 1606, the country began to be possessed by the English by public authority.



should be observed as an epoch wherever there exists a community, who enjoy the common law of England, or speak our mother tongue.

This charter, of April 10, 1606, was "*for the planting of colonies or plantations in North America.*" It placed the power in a council of thirteen.<sup>1</sup> To encourage competition, and excite rivalry, it provided for the planting of two distinct and separate colonies, each having a local government, of north and south Virginia, the former subsequently known as the Plymouth, the latter as the London Company; each company not to colonize or establish a plantation within one hundred miles of each other. Neither Gorges or the Chief Justice had their names inserted, for fear of exciting, as it would seem, the jealousy of rivals. Eight persons only

\* \* \* \* A peninsula at the mouth of the river Sagadahoc, where they built a fortress, which they named St. George." p. 18.

Sir John Popham was ridiculed in his time for his efforts to plant colonies in America.

"Chief Justice Popham not only punished malefactors, but provided for them, and first set up the discovery of *New England*, to maintain and employ those, that could not live honestly in the *Old*."

Lloyd's State Worthies, p. 46.

1. The King ordained a Council, called the Council of Virginia, November 20, 1606, consisting of the following persons:

Sir William Wade,	Sir Thomas Smith,
Sir Walter Cope,	Sir George More,
Sir Francis Popham,	Sir Ferdinando Gorges,
Sir John Trevor,	Sir Henry Montague,
Sir William Romney,	John Doddridge,
Thomas Warr,	John Eldred,
Thomas James,	James Bagg.

The records of this company have never been published. It is hoped that the effort now making to recover them, will yet prove successful.





were named in the charter; four for each colony, who might be expected to join the expeditions.

The history of this Popham Colony is very imperfectly known. They called their settlement "*Fort St. George*;" the remains of which are still in existence; from which place, George Popham writes to King James, under date of Dec. 13, 1607, in the Latin language, in which he says: "My well considered opinion is, that in these regions the glory of God may be easily evidenced, the empire of your Majesty enlarged, and the welfare of Great Britain speedily augmented."

1608. They finished their vessel, of fifty tons, in the winter and spring, called the *Virginia*, of Sagadahoc, in which they returned to England that year. They lost their governor, George Popham, during the winter, who died February 5, 1608. Captain Gilbert, who succeeded to the command, was compelled to return, to settle the estate of his brother, Sir John Gilbert, who had deceased, and to whose estate he was heir. Added to these, the death in England of the venerable Chief Justice Popham, who died June 10, 1607, and the terrible severity of the winter through which they had passed, threw discouragements in their way, which they had not the courage to surmount.

This was the critical period in the history of the English race, in the new world. Both France and



England were claiming title. The occupation of the territory could alone determine the rights of the parties. Poutrincourt, inflamed with all the zeal of the Catholic faith, kept his hold on Acadia, and returning to France, with De Monts, in 1607, obtained from him a grant of Port Royal. He came out at the instance of the King, with a  
 1610. new grant, in 1610, with Fathers Biard and Masse, and being free from the annoyance of the Huguenots, he despatched his son Biancourt to France, to bring further recruits to his Colony. The flower of their youth were cheerfully engaged for this service, from all the Jesuit Colleges of France.

As they were about to embark for Acadia, the merchants of Dieppe, who had furnished the supplies for the ship, refused the Jesuits admission on board, on account of their religion, so strong was the Protestant faith at that time in France.

The zealous and elevated Madame de Guerch-  
 1611. ville, moved to anger by this refusal of the merchants, raised the entire sum required for the voyage by contributions among the Catholic nobility, and despatched Biancourt, and his Jesuit missionaries, who arrived at Port Royal just in time to save Poutrincourt and his party from starvation. Meanwhile Champlain had in 1608 laid the foundation of Quebec, and held actual possession of the St. Lawrence under a new charter.



Emboldened by the breaking up of Popham's Colony, at Sagadahoc, the French pushed forward their possessions, claiming the territory as far south as Cape Cod. Gorges knew the importance of maintaining possession of the country, and while "*all his associates gave up to these discouragements,*" his heroic spirit, so far from yielding, rose with the occasion that demanded still greater sacrifices; and, as he says, "Finding I could no longer be seconded by others, I became an owner of a ship myself, fit for that employment, and under color of fishing and trade, I got a master and company for her, to which I sent Vines and others, my own servants, appointing them to leave the ship and ship's company for to follow their business in the usual places. By these and the help of those natives, formerly sent over, I came to be truly informed, of so much as gave me assurance, that in time, I should want no undertakers, though as yet, I was forced to hire men, to stay there; the winter quarters, at extreme rates," &c.<sup>1</sup>

We may therefore fairly claim that the occupany of Vines and others under Gorges, saved the country from falling into the hands of the French. We find the English at Pemaquid in 1608 and 1609.<sup>2</sup> Thither the Virginia Colony sent annually for fish,

1. Gorges' Briefe Narration.

2. Relations Des Jesuites.





from 1608 and onward. Sir Francis Popham, the son of the Chief Justice, continued to send his ships to Pemaquid, and the same ship was found there by Capt. John Smith, on his first visit to the coast, in 1614.

Belknap says, that Vines came over a long time before the settlement at Plymouth, and the authorities concur in fixing it in 1609. Sir Ferdinando Gorges, though he does not name the year, speaking of events in the order of their occurrence, places the settlement of Vines before the voyage of Hobson, and tradition has assigned to Vines the honor of holding Pemaquid, Monhegan and Sagadahoc, from 1609, till he removed to Saco, where he spent the winter of 1616-17.

Capt. Hobson came over as early as 1611. Gorges says in connection with this voyage, "for some years together, nothing to my private profit was realized, for what I get one way, I spent another."

In 1613, Argall, from the Virginia Colony, on visiting the coast for fish, learned that the French had a trading house at Penobscot, and a settlement at Mount Desert, or St. Saviour, another at St. Croix, and one at Port Royal. After procuring a sufficient force, he broke up these posts, and destroyed St. Saviour and Port Royal, carrying the Jesuits and some of their adherents to Virginia as prisoners, many of the French settlers fled to the woods, but returned and re-occupied the places thus



laid waste by Argall.<sup>1</sup> French fishing and trading ships were constantly visiting these places.

1614. In June, 1614, Capt. Henry Harley, one of Popham's Colony at Sagadahoc, sailed in Gorges' employ with Assacumet, one of those natives first taken by Weymouth, and the famous Indian Epenow, of Martha's Vineyard, who proposed to show them valuable mines of gold. He was as Gorges says, "a person of goodly stature, strong and well proportioned," but he escaped from them as soon as they came to the coast, and the expedition was productive of no useful results.

It is not necessary to narrate all the events connected with the expeditions to the country, prior to 1614, when the eccentric but intrepid Captain John Smith appeared on the coast, in command of four ships.

This venture of Smith paid a profit of £1,500, "by traffic in otter and beaver skins, salt fish, train oil and such other like gross commodities." Smith at this time, made a plot or map of the country, since known as Smith's map of New England, published in 1616, and he was made Admiral of New England by the Company.

1615. In 1615, Smith sailed again for New England, in two ships, which voyage proved disastrous. He lost his masts in a gale, returned to

1. See note on page 19. Also Appendix B.



Plymouth, and again sailing, was taken prisoner by the French. One of the vessels, however, in command of Capt. Dermer, made its way to New England, and returned well laden.<sup>1</sup>

In the same year, Sir Richard Hawkins, 1616. President of the Plymouth Company, departed for these parts, and took in a cargo for Spain, principally fish, which proved a profitable business. In 1616, eight ships from London and Plymouth made profitable voyages to New England, and the value of the fisheries of Monhegan was fully established. There can be no doubt, that Monhegan was occupied with a trading, though changing, population, many years before Plymouth was settled, and when Edward Winslow, of the Plymouth flock, visited it, in May, 1622, as he says, "*to obtain victuals for our famishing plantation,*" he found there thirty ships. He also says, "I found there, kind entertainment, and good respect; with a willingness to supply our wants; through provident and discreet care, we were recovered, and preserved, till our own crop in the ground was ready."

Such was the condition of New England 1616. affairs in 1616, before war had broken out among the Indian tribes, pestilence destroyed the native population, or the Pilgrim settlement been initiated. The country was well known along the

1. See Appendix C.



coast, from the Bay of Fundy to Cape Cod, and the fisheries yielded abundant profit.

It was comparatively full of people, a native population, subsisting not only on game and the products of the soil, but on oysters, salmon, and the choicest fish, in which the harbors, rivers and coves abounded.

The territory, now known as the State of Maine, with its numerous and well sheltered harbors; its noble rivers, swarming with the most valuable fish; its forests, of unrivaled beauty, surpassing, in the estimation of the navigators, those of the north of Europe; its soil, bearing readily the choicest grains of Europe, in addition to Indian corn, and the potato, indigenous to this continent; the charming variety of scenery; its undulating surface; its climate, that for healthfulness and salubrity, left nothing to desire; attracted the most skilful of the European voyageurs to its shores.

The region lying between Cape Porpoise (Kennebunk) and the Penobscot, was the most frequented of all, for it is by far the most beautiful portion of New England, and the possession of it excited the ambition of the French and English alike.

It was the seat of Indian Empire, more populous than any portion of the Continent, the home of the Bashaba, whose authority extended to Narragansett Bay.





The Indians always occupied the best portions of the Continent until driven from them by superior force, as seen in our day in the case of the Cherokees and Choctaws, of the South, and the Penobscots of our own State. The French were the first to perceive this great fact, and their possessions followed closely the grounds held by the Indians. We have not time to pursue this inquiry, but we hazard nothing in predicting, that the seats of Empire on this Continent, of the European races, will eventually coincide, with those of the aboriginal inhabitants.

The coast was at that time well delineated on maps in common use; the Dutch had a flourishing Colony on the Hudson river, and on the same day that John Smith was exhibiting to Prince Charles, for his approval of the names upon it, his map of New England, the Dutch Figurative map of New Netherlands, extending east to the Penobscot, was laid before the States General for their inspection and adoption. The early navigators saw nothing inviting between Cape Cod and Manhattan, while all the harbors east of Cape Porpoise, were filled with voyageurs from the Old World.

In 1602, when Gosnold came to New England, the Indians, clothed in Indian apparel, visited his ships without any signs of surprise, as at Pemaquid in 1607, the aborigines came fearlessly on board the vessels of Popham and Gilbert; and the



famous Indian Sagamore Samoset, went from Pemaquid to greet the Pilgrims at Plymouth, in March, 1621, with hearty welcome in their own language, "*Welcome, Welcome, Englishmen,*" said Samoset, and proved his friendship to the end of his life. The welcome of Samoset was sincere, because the Indian tribes, who valued goodly rivers, fertile fields, and abundant forests, as the best hunting grounds, felt no jealousy of men who sought a resting place on the barren and deserted sands of Cape Cod;—where the native population had been swept off by the plague. And the French looked with equal indifference on that feeble band of fishermen whose location at Plymouth in no way interfered with their plans of dominion in the new world.

About this time, 1616, a bloody war broke out between the Tarratines, who lived east of the Penobscot, supposed to be incited to it by the French, and the Bashaba of Pemaquid. He was slain, and his people destroyed. At the same time, a devastating pestilence swept off the Indian race without injuring the whites. Gorges says, "Vines and the rest with him, that live in the cabins with these people that died, not one of them ever felt their heads to ache."

The year 1616 brings us to what may be called the Pilgrim Period; for at this time were initiated those measures that resulted in what Mr. Webster called the first settlement of New England.



The history of the times would disprove the popular theory, that "religious impulse accomplished the early settlement of New England;" by which is meant the settlement therein of the Pilgrims. But the plan of colonizing America did not originate with them, nor were they in any sense the leaders of the movement. They resorted thither from necessity, and while they profited by the labors and enterprise of others, achieved nothing beyond those in a subordinate position.

The settlement of New England was the work of many years, and was achieved by the same influences as those still at work, to extend the Saxon-Norman race. It was the legitimate result of the commercial ideas and adventurous spirit of the times.

The Protestant faith was struggling to maintain its foothold in the British Isles in the reigns of Henry VIII., of Edward VI., and of Mary, and not till the reign of Elizabeth was it fully established. This consummation gave internal repose to the nation, and allowed the spirit of enterprise to expand and ripen. This spirit sought employment in the new world, and drew from Elizabeth the earliest charters.

The English Puritans exhibited the restless spirit of change that had grown up in the English character, under the influence of the last fifty years; and not in the reign of the despotic Queen, but in





the reign of the weak James, those who had not property, or Court favor, naturally preferred a life of adventure with the hopes of profit, or preferment in a new country.

It was the age of private enterprise, and of intellectual freedom. The East India Company was laying the foundation of English empire in the East, while the Council of Virginia was planting the seeds of a more glorious dominion over the wilds of nature in the West. The same spirit that has filled the valley of the Mississippi and the Pacific shore, with natives of New England and of Europe, within the last fifty years, led to the first emigration to America.

That "religious impulse" led the followers of Robinson to Leyden, in 1608, is, undoubtedly, true, but religious persecution in England soon ceased, and no one there suffered death, for that cause, after 1611. The forms of the church service were as harmless then as now, and were originally adopted, after long debate, by a majority of *one* only, in a full convention of the English Clergy, in the reign of Elizabeth.<sup>1</sup> The articles of the church were Calvinistic, and in no wise differed in doctrines from those of the Puritans.

Elizabeth was a far greater stickler for observance of church ceremonies than any one of her suc-

1. Sanford's History of the Great Rebellion, p. 67.



cessors. But the Leyden flock did not leave England in her reign.

It is time to vindicate the truth of history ; to do justice to the claims of Gorges, and to repel the calumnious charges of the men who founded the Theocracy of New England ; who persecuted alike Quakers, Baptists, and Churchmen. Fifty years after the putting of men to death for errors of doctrine had ceased, in Old England, from which the Massachusetts Puritans pretended to have fled "for conscience sake," they executed men of the most blameless lives for the slightest differences of opinion, or doctrine, in religion. On finding that Baptists and Quakers and Churchmen were only multiplied the more, by this means, as persecution grew more severe, they finally passed a statute, that Quakers should be treated as vagabonds, whipped from town to town by the Magistrates, till driven beyond the boundaries of the Colony. In point of fact, within the boundaries of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, from the time they first landed, till the arrival of Sir Edmund Andros as Governor in 1686, the Government of Massachusetts Bay, was more arbitrary and intolerant than any despotism from which they fled from England. Stripes, imprisonment and even death itself were inflicted, on those who regarded baptism as a sacrament, fit only to be administered to those capable of understanding its import. The banishment of Wheelwright



and others for antinomian heresy and his escape into Maine, show the character of the times.

The Plymouth flock, a portion of those whom Robinson had gathered at Leyden, were an amiable and pious people. They gladly sought the protection of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, the founder of the New England Company, prior to their removal from Holland, came out in view of his promise of a charter, from whom they obtained it in 1621.

1620. But they never, in fact, exerted any considerable political influence on the history of the Continent.

The Colony of Massachusetts Bay, on the other hand, was guided by the boldest set of adventurers that ever set foot on American soil. The fathers of this Colony, who first met in Nottinghamshire, 1627, and those who led the way afterwards, were men whom Charles had imprisoned for their too great freedom of speech in the House of Commons, and who gladly escaped to America to avoid a worse fate at home.

1629. Sir Ferdinando Gorges readily gave them a charter, March 19, 1629. They came over the same year. One condition, as Gorges says, of the grant was, that it should not be prejudicial to the previous grant to his son, Robert Gorges, made in 1622, then in the actual occupation of his grantees. But writing secretly to Endicott, their first Governor, under date of April 17, 1629, "the



Governor and Deputy of the New England Company for a plantation in Massachusetts Bay," residing in England, advise him, that Mr. Oldham had become the grantee of Robert Gorges, and that the Rev. Mr. Blackstone and Mr. Wm. Jeffreys had been duly authorized to put Oldham in possession of the premises, yet they held it void in law, and advised that "they should take possession of the chiefe part thereof," and thus destroy the value of the grant previously given to Gorges. This was done, and Gorges' grantees were driven out — a fair specimen of the sense of justice of that Company. To mislead the people of England, as to their true designs, after leaving England, while on ship-board, they publicly requested the prayers of the *English Church*, for their success in planting "the Protestant faith in America." But on landing, they forcibly expelled the two brothers Brown, who came over highly recommended by the Company in London, and against all protestations and reason they were sent back to England by the first vessel that returned, because they absented themselves from their meeting on the Sabbath. These men, in the privacy of their own chamber, were guilty of following in their devotions, the form of the English Liturgy. For this they were driven out of the country.

The Massachusetts Bay Company sent their charter with the great seal of the King to America, to





render its recall the more difficult; and when it was subsequently vacated by writ of *quo warranto*, refused to comply with the order of Court for its return. The disputes at home which resulted in the beheading of Charles and the Revolution of 1688, in England, alone saved the leaders and their followers from punishment. The Royal Charter, uniting the Colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, the Province of Maine, and all the territory east of it, under the Governorship of Sir William Phipps, a native of Pemaquid, put an end to the Theocracy of New England in 1691.

The modern popular history of New England, has sought to conceal the exact truth, and to throw apology over the grossest offences.

Those who trust to such early writers as the Cottons, the Mathers and Hubbards of former days, on whom the modern historians of Massachusetts seem mainly to rely, may find abundant means of correcting their opinions.

We may, at this time, venture to speak of these men as they deserve. The accurate and accomplished historian of Rhode Island, in his recent history, speaking of the Massachusetts historians, justly says:—

“The opinions of men who maligned the purity of Williams, of Clarke, and of Gorton, who bore ‘false witness’ to the character and the acts of some of the wisest and best men who ever lived in New



England ; who strove to blast the reputation of people whose liberal views they could not comprehend ; who collected evidence to crush the good name of their more virtuous opponents by casting upon them the odium of acts wherein they were themselves the guilty parties ; who committed outrages in the name of God, far more barbarous than the worst with which they ever charged ‘the usurper ;’ the opinions of such men, we say, are not to be received without a challenge.” — [*Arnold’s History of Rhode Island. Vol. I. p. 514.*]

The impartial and graphic Macauley, thus describes the Puritans of that day :—

“The persecution which the separatists had undergone, had been severe enough to irritate, but not severe enough to destroy. They had not been tamed into submission, but bated into savageness, and stubbornness. After the fashion of oppressed sects, they mistook their own vindictive feelings for emotions of piety ; encouraged in themselves in reading and meditation, a disposition to brood over their wrongs, and when they had worked themselves up into hating their enemies, imagined that they were only hating the enemies of Heaven. In the New Testament there was little indeed which, even when perverted by the most disingenuous exposition, could seem to countenance the indulgence of malevolent passions. But the Old Testament contained the history of a race selected by God, to



be witnesses of his wrath and ministers of his vengeance, and especially commanded by him to do many things which, if done without his special command, would have been atrocious crimes. In such a history, it was not difficult for fierce and gloomy spirits to find much that might be distorted to suit their wishes. The extreme Puritans, therefore, began to feel for the Old Testament a preference, which, perhaps, they did not distinctly avow, even to themselves; but which showed itself in all their sentiments and habits. They paid to the Hebrew language a respect which they refused to that tongue in which the discourses of Jesus, and the Epistles of Paul, have come down to us. They baptized their children by the names, not of christian saints, but of Hebrew patriarchs and warriors. In defiance of the express and reiterated declarations of Luther and Calvin, they turned the weekly festival by which the church had from the primitive times, commemorated the resurrection of her Lord, into a Jewish Sabbath. They sought for principles of jurisprudence in the Mosaic law, and for precedents to guide their ordinary conduct, in the books of Judges and Kings. Their thoughts and discourses ran much on acts which were assuredly not recorded as examples for our imitation. The prophet who hewed in pieces a captive King, the rebel general who gave the blood of a Queen to the dogs, the matron, who, in defiance of plighted faith,





and of the laws of Eastern hospitality, drove the nail into the brain of the fugitive ally who had just fed at her board, and who was sleeping under the shadow of her tent, were proposed, as models, to Christians, suffering under the tyranny of princes and prelates."—[*Macaulay's History of England. Vol. I. p. 62.*

The most odious features of Puritan intolerance were developed in Massachusetts, with the rise of that party to power in England, and when the Commonwealth passed away at home, the weak counsels of the Stuarts were unable to control the people of New England. We find the Massachusetts Puritans persecutors from the outset of their career, denying the rights of citizenship to all but actual church members, and refusing to others protection even against the Indians. When the first New England league was formed in 1643, for better protection against savage warfare the Delegates of Maine were excluded because they were Churchmen, and those of Rhode Island, because they were Baptists.<sup>1</sup>

The settlement of Plymouth is clearly due to an act of Sir Ferdinando Gorges. His aim from the first was the settlement of the country, not advantage to himself. He sought, by putting other men prominently forward, and in every

1. Bradford's History of Plymouth Plantation, p. 416.

Brodhead's History of New York, pp. 361, 362.



other way to disarm the jealousy that always follows upright public action. As Gorges says, "the planting of Colonies in America, was undertaken for the advancement of religion, the enlargement of the bounds of our nation, the increase of trade, and the employment of many thousands of all sorts of people." The grant obtained on his request, says, "*was never intended to be converted to private uses,*" and in answer to the Commons, who sought to abrogate his charter, he publicly offered to surrender it; "not only in behalf of himself, but of the rest of those interested in the Patent, so they would prosecute the settling of the plantation as was first intended." "Wherein," he said, "we would be their humble servants in all that lay in our power, without looking to the great charge that had been expended in the discovery and seizure of the coast, and bringing it to the pass it was come unto."

This was "after they had found by our constant perseverance therein, some profit by a course of fishing upon that coast."

All writers agree, that after 1616, the New England Fisheries were successful and profitable to the English.

At this time, or prior to March 1617, Gorges, in pursuance of his policy of settling the country, invited the Leyden church to emigrate to America. He says, "before the unhappy controversy happened between those of Virginia and myself, they were



forced, through the great charge they had been at, to hearken to any propositions, that might give ease and furtherance to so hopeful a business. For that purpose it was referred to their consideration, how necessary it was that means might be used *to draw into those enterprises* some of those families that had retired themselves into Holland for scruple of conscience, giving them such freedom and liberty as might stand with their likings. This advice being hearkened unto, there were, that undertook the putting it in practice and accordingly brought it forth," &c. "Such as their weak fortunes were able to provide," and they "with great difficulty recovered the coast of New England," &c., &c.

The Council of Virginia still held the country under the original charter of 1606, and it was the work of Gorges to draw the Leyden flock to America. Bradford says, "they liked not the idea of going South." They had confidence in the success of Gorges' plan of a separate charter for New England.

The Leyden flock early saw that they must soon become extinct if they remained in Holland. They could not remain longer in that country, or return to England to reside. They had little or no means of support, and trusted to the chances of obtaining it, in the new employment of fishing and trading to New England, then so popular at home. Robert Cushman and John Carver were sent to the King,





asking permission to "enjoy liberty of conscience in America, where they would endeavor the advancement of His Majesty's dominions, and the enlargement of the gospel." "This," his Majesty King James said, "was a good and honest motive," and asking "what profit might arise in the part we intended, (the most northern parts of Virginia,)" 'twas answered "Fishing." "So God have my soul," said James, "'tis an honest trade, 'twas the Apostles own calling." Winslow says, "some one of the Plymouth Colony lent them £300 gratis, for three years, which was repaid." Winslow further says, "some of the chief of the Plymouth Company doubted not to obtain our suit of the King, for liberty in religion." Bradford says, "some others wrought with the Archbishop, and they prevailed in sounding his Majesty's mind, that he would connive at them, and not molest them, provided they carried themselves peaceably."<sup>1</sup>

A still greater difficulty remained, the raising of money for the expedition. This was finally done through Mr. Thomas Weston, a merchant of London, who with others, 70 in all, "some gentlemen, some merchants, some handicraftsmen; some ad-

1. The date of their application was in 1618, as appears by the following :

1618. Seven articles which the Church of Leyden sent to the Council of England to be considered of, in respect of their judgments, occasioned about their going to Virginia. *Endorsed* "Copy of Seven articles sent unto the Council of England by the Brownists of Leyden."

[*Calendar of Colonial Papers.* Vol. I. p. 21.]





venturing great sums, some small, as their estates and affections served." By the hard conditions agreed to, the whole Leyden Company, adventured their persons, as well as their estates. Hutchinson says, "they had no notion of cultivating any more ground than would afford their own necessary provisions, but proposed that their chief secular employment should be, commerce with the natives." It was a trading Company, not designing a community of goods, but a fair adventure in business. Any idea of founding a Colony or of remaining in the country beyond the seven years of their partnership, no where appears in their earlier movements or writings.

Having made up their minds to emigrate from Holland, they formed a partnership for seven years, to pursue fishing and traffic in the new world. They then applied to the Council of Virginia for a charter. Bradford says, "by the advice of some friends, the Patent was not taken in the name of any of their own Company, but in the name of Mr. John Wincob, a religious gentleman, belonging to the Countess of Lincoln, who intended to go with them."<sup>1</sup>

The statement explains fully the relations of the parties. This Countess of Lincoln had the most intimate relations with the New England settlements. Some of her children afterwards emigrated

1. Bradford's History of Plymouth Plantation, p. 41.



to America, and her daughter Frances was at that time the wife of John Gorges, the eldest son and heir of Sir Ferdinando.

Their departure from Deft Haven, their arrival in England, and their trials in getting to sea, have been narrated with a minuteness and particularity that leaves nothing unsaid, and the voyage of the *Mayflower* is as famous as that celebrated one of ancient times, in quest of the Golden Fleece.

Capt. Smith says the Brownists found his chart or map "cheaper than his employment as a pilot," and with that in their hands they sailed to New England and sought Milford Haven, conspicuously laid down in it, now Cape Cod Harbor. Here they came to anchor, and sought New Plymouth, the precise spot designated on Smith's map, four years before.

When the Pilgrims sailed, Gorges had not obtained the charter for New England. On the return of the *Mayflower*, they sent to Gorges for their charter. In speaking of it, he says:—

"They found that the authority they had from the Company of Virginia could not warrant their abode in that place ; \* \* They hastened away their ship with orders to their Solicitor to deal with me, to be a means, they might have a grant from the Council of New England's affairs, to settle in the place,—which was performed to their particular satisfaction, and good content of them all."



Their Charter was dated, June 1, 1621, granting to John Pierce, a clothworker of London, and his associates: One hundred acres of land to each settler, with a nominal rent, commencing at the end of seven years, the termination of their partnership; with liberal grants of land for public uses; and also certain rights of hunting, fishing, &c. It did not profess to grant any civil rights, or confer on them the power of making laws.<sup>1</sup> In that respect it differs from the charter granted to Robert Gorges in 1622, which vested ample powers for governing the country by means of a Parliament, one branch, like the Commons of England chosen by the freeholders of New England, the other appointed by authority of the Crown, with an Executive under the name of Governor.<sup>2</sup>

In this Charter to Robert Gorges, we find the model, or pattern, of the British Colonial Governments of later times. The division of the powers of Government into three branches was unknown to the Pilgrims, or to the Puritans for a long period, and this accounts for the despotic character of their governments. It was a quarrel in the General Court of Massachusetts about Mrs. Sherman's Pig, that led to the breaking up of the General Court and its division into two branches, in 1645.<sup>3</sup>

1. This long lost Charter has been recovered, and is printed in full in vol. ii., 4th Series of Mass. Historical Coll.

2. This Charter to Robert Gorges is found in full, in Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 44, vol. ii., Maine Hist. Coll.

3. This amusing story is found in Winthrop's Journal, vol. ii. p. 260.





The Pilgrim government at Plymouth, which continued till the charter of William and Mary in 1692, never attained to the knowledge of a division of the Legislative power into two independent branches. Their government was through the church.

The first charter granted to the Plymouth flock, came, therefore, from the original Council of Virginia, who held at that time the entire country. Through Thomas Weston they had heard of the plan of Gorges for a separate grant of New England, and they sailed for North Virginia, trusting to Gorges for a grant.

The petition of Gorges for the New England charter, was dated March 3, 1620. An order in Council was made July 23, 1620, directing the preparation of the new charter, and it passed, the seals, Nov. 3, 1620. In this charter it says:—

“We have been humbly petitioned unto, by our trusty and well beloved servant, SIR FERDINANDO GORGES, Knight, Captain of our Fort and Island by Plymouth, and by certain the principal Knights and Gentlemen Adventurers of the said Second Colonye, and by divers other Persons of Quality, who now intend to be their Associates divers of which have been at great and extraordinary charge, and sustained many losses in seeking and discovering a Place fitt and convenient to lay the Foundation of a hopeful plantation, and have years past, by God's assistance and their own Endeavors, *taken*



*actual Possession of the Continent hereafter mentioned in our name and to our use as Sovereign Lord thereof, and have settled already some of our people in places agreeable to their Desires in those places ; and in Confidence of prosperous Success therein, by the Continuance of God's Devine Blessing, and our Royall permission, have resolved in a more plentiful and effectual manner to prosecute the same."*<sup>1</sup>

That Gorges had complete possession of the country before the Plymouth people came over, is also shown by the complaints against him for a monopoly in fishing. He had brought the country sufficiently into notice to attract thither the Pilgrim flock.

To deny to Gorges, therefore, the glory of being the founder of New England because his own Colony was overshadowed by that of Massachusetts Bay, is as unjust as it would be to deny to Columbus credit as the discoverer of America, and to assign the glory of it to Sebastian Cabot, simply because Cabot first discovered the main land of the Continent seventeen months before it was seen by Columbus. All fair minds agree, that it was the far-sighted and gifted Genoese, who by inspiration, looked through the darkness of ages, forecast the future, and pointed the way for Cabot and Vespucci to the new world across the ocean, though his modesty permitted the name of another to be given

2. See Appendix D.



to it, that of Cabotia, which for a time gained favor, yielding to that of America. Still more clearly than Columbus did the instinctive sagacity of Gorges foresee and predict the fruits of his own great endeavor, and beheld a rising State in America free from European control. And yet for the last thirty-nine years, or since Mr. Webster's great speech at Plymouth on the 22d of Dec., 1820, the truth of severe history has been overlooked, in admiration of the creations of his genius.

As an Epic Poem, Mr. Webster's speech stands in the same relation to history as the Iliad of Homer or the Æneid of Virgil. The war of the gods on Olympus, and the flight of Anchises, regarded at one time as historic truths, were just as real and true to history as Mr. Webster's description of the landing of the Pilgrims.

Among all the achievements of Mr. Webster, there is nothing that shows his real greatness, so much as those efforts, by which, in the style and manner of the ancient historians, he embodies in an impressive form, the great facts and ideas that are supposed to govern human affairs. It is fair to apply to this composition the definition of "Classical History," so clearly and beautifully expressed in his address before the New York Historical Society of Feb. 23, 1852. This Pilgrim speech is a true specimen of Classical History; "not," as he says, "a memoir, or a crude collection of acts, occurren-





ces, and dates, it is a composition, a production, which has unity of design, like a work of statuary or of painting." As such, his Plymouth speech bears the impress of his creative mind. He transferred to the Plymouth Panorama a representation of the heroic achievements of Gorges, of Popham, and of Vines.

Mr. Webster's poetry has been regarded as history. But it is such history as are the writings of Livy, or the historic plays of Shakspeare.

The mission of the Poet precedes that of the historian, and the imaginary characters of a poetic mind continue for a while to walk the earth under the shadow of a great name. The Pilgrims have richly enjoyed this distinguished honor.

The Hon. Edward Everett, evidently on the authority of Mr. Webster, says in his Plymouth speech, four years later, "This, the source of our being, the Birth Day of all New England,—this grand undertaking was accomplished on the spot where we now dwell." "A continent for the *first time* explored, a vast ocean traversed by men, women and children, voluntarily exiling themselves from the fairest portions of the Old World," &c.

Modern historians of the Massachusetts school, have since then, taken these flights of poetic fancy for historic verities, and sought to elevate them into the dignity of history. They might as well insist, that a modern fourth of July oration was the





cause of our Revolutionary war, though uttered some years after that event had taken place.

Regarded as a political event, the Plymouth settlement was not of the slightest consequence or importance. It neither aided or retarded the settlement of the country, and is of no moment except as the actors in that work were concerned, or those who claim thence their inheritance. As a tale of individual and personal heroism, in which patient resignation was mingled with superstitious confidence, it deserves sympathy and respect. But those who seek to give it political importance, confound the Plymouth settlement with that of the Puritan Commonwealth of Massachusetts Bay, two events as independent of each other in every respect as was the settlement of New Netherlands from that of Lord Baltimore, on the Chesapeake.

The Pilgrims had at the outset no idea of founding a Colony. The idea may have been suggested to them by the language of the charter of June, 1621. It is true, they dignified their head officer with the title of "Governor," a term formerly applied to the head of any family or company. He had no civil authority whatever, and the fact that for the first seven years no records of any sort were kept, and not a scrap of written history made prior to 1627, shows how primitive were all their ideas of government and of property.

Bradford began his history in 1630, and at a later



date, rejoicing over the downfall of the Bishops, in the days of the Commonwealth, he appends thereto the following comments: "when I began these scribbled writings, which was about the year 1630, and so peeced up at times of leasure, afterwards; little did I think their downfall was so near," &c.<sup>1</sup>

The compact signed on board the Mayflower, under date of November 11, 1620, which has been eulogized as "the germ of republican freedom," was, as Bradford says, "a combination, occasioned partly by the discontented and mutinous speeches that when they come ashore, they would use their own libertie," &c.<sup>2</sup>

In 1632, the first records of Plymouth Colony were commenced, but they had before them the example of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, whose Records are of the same date as their settlement.

The famous Capt. John Smith, a cotemporary, says, "about one hundred Brownists went to Plymouth, whose humorous ignorance caused them to

1. Bradford's History of Plimouth, p. 6.

2. Bradford thus explains the matter:—

"I shall a little returne backe and begine with a combination made by them before they came ashore, being y<sup>e</sup> first foundation of their governmente in this place : occasioned partly by y<sup>e</sup> discontented and mutinous speeches that some of the strangers amongst them had let fall from them in y<sup>e</sup> ship. That when they came ashore they would use their own libertie ; for none had power to command them ; the patente they had being for Virginia, and not for New-england, which belonged to another Government. with which y<sup>e</sup> Virginia Company had nothing to doe. And partly that such an acte by them done (this their condition considered) might be as firme as any patent, and in some respects more sure." The form was as followeth. p. 89.



endure a wonderful deal of misery, with infinite patience."

It was under the charter given to John Wincob, and in the protection of the original Virginia Company, with the map of Smith for their guide, they came to America, too poor to own their vessel, or to pay for the land they should here occupy, and yet these obligations were never repaid, or acknowledged. The representations of Mr. Everett and others would lead us to suppose, that the Pilgrims embarked for America across an unknown sea, to seek a resting place in thickest darkness of ignorance, like that deep mystery that shrouded the Atlantic, when the vessel of Columbus first turned its prow Westward from the Canaries, one hundred and twenty-eight years before.

Oratory, painting and poetry, have brought their richest gifts to the Pilgrim altar, and raised this feeble band of unlettered men to the rank of statesmen and heroes. The genius of Webster, the oratory of Everett, the industry of Bancroft, and the zeal of Palfrey, have not failed to offer incense to the pride of Massachusetts as the leading community of the Western world;—and in their devotion to her, overlooked the great influences that for a whole generation, had been preparing the way, for the secure occupation of her soil. And they have too readily followed the authority of those partizan writers, whose zeal for their own cause, has out-





run their sense of justice. And historic truth demands that the view of the character of Gorges as drawn by the two latter, should be corrected by the light of more recently discovered information. Gorges' defence against the charge of having unjustly betrayed the Earl of Essex, refutes it altogether, and should dispel the prejudice that Mr. Palfrey's recent work is calculated to perpetuate. The long lost history of Bradford, recovered in 1855, and published in 1856, since the first issue of Mr. Bancroft's earliest volumes, will, undoubtedly, lead to a modification of the views expressed by him as to the claims of Gorges.

It seems strange that the Pilgrims should have been advanced to the condition of heroes, while the services of Gorges, in a long and illustrious life of duty should have been overlooked and forgotten. But this is not difficult of explanation. By force of accident, not now needful to relate, the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, became the leading one of New England, and its population have always, beyond any other people, indulged their pride of ancestry. Mr. Webster easily sympathized with that spirit of Massachusetts that demanded for her the proud title of Parent Commonwealth. He enstamped on his time, beyond any man of this country, the impress of his own proud and heroic spirit. He inspired a love of country, a pride of home, a feeling of contentment and satisfaction favorable to industry, to reli-



gious sentiment, and the accumulation of property. The industrial superiority of that State, the growth of the last thirty years, is largely due to the elevated sentiments by him inspired.

With the progress of refinement, and the increase of wealth in every civilized community, in every age, there is a tendency to exaggerate the past, to undervalue the present, and to question all anticipations for the future. As weary age looks at existing facts as the limit of human experience, the poetic mind encourages future hopes, reproducing from the past, all the varied forms of beauty or grandeur that the page of romance has foreshadowed—and every cultivated community must have its classic and romantic age, demanding a corresponding history. It glories in after years in the fabled greatness of a remote, but heroic ancestry, till severe history dispels the poetic charm.

The Egyptian tradition pointed in after years to the days of its earlier grandeur a thousand years before those of Manetho, the founder of the temple of Karnac, whose dynasty commenced thirty-four centuries before the Christian Era. The Grecian poets, of its more modern times, constantly dwelt on the fabled glories of the past, the age that preceded the days of Homer and Hesiod, and the Roman orators in the proudest days of its luxurious civilization, pointed back to the foundation of Rome, whose fabled city was but the rudest structure of



savage life. England glories still in the crude institutions of Alfred, while France with greater glory recounts the heroic deeds of Charlemagne.

New England has had her days of hero worship, and brought her devout offerings in the same spirit to the shrine of the Pilgrims, and raised them from the humble condition of artizans and laborers to the rank of founders of Empires, and the sentimental Mrs. Hemans, under the spell of Mr. Webster's genius, has thrown the charms of her poetic fancy around the rude homes of its early settlers.

All this is a pure myth. The war of the Gods on Olympus, and the mythic tales of the love of Sapho, are just as real. Had the Pilgrims landed on the rocky cliffs of Sagadahoc, of Donaquet, or of Pemaquid, the poetic fancy of Mrs. Hemans might have had the color of the truth. But to talk of "the rock bound coast" of Plymouth, amid the sands of Cape Cod, and of "the giant branches" of the scrubby pines on the south shore of Massachusetts Bay, is simply a flight of fancy. "The bleak and death-like desolation of nature" which, as Mr. Everett truly says, "met the eyes of the Pilgrims on their approach to land, are changed by the exuberant fancy of Mrs. Hemans into charming spots like those which the voyageurs had found in the rich forests, of that Norumbega, whose praises had been sung by John Milton.

The beautiful retreats at Diamond Cove and





Pentecost Harbor,—the rich forests on the banks of the Penobscot, the Sheepscot and the Kennebec, had attracted thither numerous voyagers from the old world, before the Leyden Church had been gathered, under the charge of the pious Robinson.

New England had all the attractions described by the early navigators answering the poetic descriptions of Mrs. Hemans. It had "good harbors, very good fishing, much fowl, noble forests, gallant rivers, and the land as good ground as any can desire." But this does not apply to the region where the Pilgrims made their home.

Let every one read the poetic description of the landing of the Pilgrims by Mr. Webster, and study the picture of it by Sargent, with the simple history of Bradford in his hands, and he is lost in admiration, like that which the student of classic history feels, in the perusal of the works of the great master of Epic poetry. According to Bradford, they embarked at Deft Haven, July 21, 1620, sailed from Southampton, Aug. 5, put back twice,—persevered in their plans, and espied Cape Cod, Nov. 9, 1620, old style, and came to anchor in Cape Cod harbor, Nov. 11, 1620, and on the same day, signed their compact of Government, and chose or rather confirmed, John Carver, Governor.

Their ship remained at Cape Cod, till Dec. 25, 1620, new style. Prior to this, Bradford, Standish and others, had explored the country, setting out





on the 16th of Dec. On the 21st of Dec., they passed through Plymouth, and returned to the ship on the 24th. After much doubt and difficulty, and days of wandering, on Wednesday the 30th of Dec., they determined on their place of settlement. On the 4th of January, 1621, they went first on shore, and began to cut timber for a house. The *Mayflower* remained in the harbor till April 15, when she departed for England. Till then, a large portion of them lived on shipboard, and there is no account of any distinct or specific act of landing. The winter was mild beyond example, and when Samoset "the Sagamore of Moratiggon arrived, March 26, he was stark naked, only a leather about his waist, with a fringe about a span long, or a little or more." Had the winter been as usual, or severe as that of 1607, when Popham wintered at Sagadahoc, not a soul of them could have survived.

Modern historians have accidentally fixed on the 22d of December as the landing day of the Pilgrims, and they attempt to justify it by the statement of Bradford, that on that day, the explorers passed through Plymouth and pitched upon it as one spot, to be recommended for the settlement. But unfortunately for their accuracy, this day was the 21st, and the adoption of the 22d, is not justified by any fact whatever.<sup>1</sup>

1. "And this being the last day of y<sup>e</sup> week, (Saturday, Dec. 19, n. s.) they prepared 'ther to keep y<sup>e</sup> Sabbath. On Munday they sounded y<sup>e</sup>



The great misfortune of Gorges was, that, as a man of true honor, he was compelled to support the fortunes of the weak and decaying Stuart dynasty, to which he remained true to the last. He also suffered in his fortunes in not emigrating to America.

In a paper on file in the English State Paper Office, quoted in the recent volume of Mr. Folsom, it is stated that Gorges came to New England with Mason in 1619,<sup>1</sup> but we find no confirmation of

harbor, and founde it fitt for shipping ; and marched into y<sup>e</sup> land, and found diverse cornfeilds, and litle runing brooks, a place (as they supposed) fitt for situation ; at least it was y<sup>e</sup> best they could find, and y<sup>e</sup> season, and their presente necessitie, made them glad to accepte of it. So they returned to their shipp again with this news to y<sup>e</sup> rest of their people, which did much comforte their harts.

On y<sup>e</sup> 15, (25 n. s.) of Desem<sup>r</sup>, they wayed anchor to go to y<sup>e</sup> place they had discovered, and came within 2 leagues of it, but were faine to bear up againe ; but y<sup>e</sup> 16 (26) day y<sup>e</sup> winde came faire, and they arrived safe in this harbor. And after wards tooke better view of y<sup>e</sup> place, and resolved wher to pitch their dwellings ; and y<sup>e</sup> 25 day (Jan. 4, 1621, n. s.) begane to erecte y<sup>e</sup> first house for common use to receive them and their goods."—[Bradford's *History*, pp. 88, 89.

The above contains all that relates to the famous *Landing of the Pilgrims on Plymouth Rock*. The intelligent reader instinctively smiles at this recital, when he contrasts this simple statement, with the gorgeous decoration of the event by Mr. Webster. When the anniversary of the Landing of the Pilgrims was instituted, in 1769, the authors added *eleven* days for difference of style, instead of *ten* the true difference. They fixed on Monday, the day "*they sounded the harbor and marched into the land,*" as the one most deserving of commemoration. From this has grown the magnificent conception of the Landing of the Pilgrims !

1. 1674-5 March  
*The title and case of Robert Mason touching the province of New Hampshire in New England.*

A<sup>o</sup> 1616 King James I. sends John Mason Esq. as Governor to Newfoundland, who after remaining there two years was ordered to New England and with Sir Ferdinando Gorges made a voyage along the coast in 1619, account of which they furnished to his Majesty. A<sup>o</sup> 1620 the King grants by Charter to some of the nobility under the title of the Council of New England the territory called New England with divers privileges &c.

Folsom's Catalogue, p. 12.



this statement, elsewhere. He was commissioned it is true, by the King as Governor of New England in 1637,<sup>1</sup> but from the accidental loss of the ship in which he was to embark, he did not set sail for America.

But he persevered in his great work, and lived to see in New England prosperous communities, and his Province of Mayne, the best governed of all. He not only established the Pilgrims at Plymouth, but subsequently caused to be granted to them, a large and valuable tract of land on the Kennebec, with an enlargement of their Charter, January 13, 1629.<sup>2</sup> Nova Scotia was also granted to Sir William Alexander afterwards Lord Stirling, in 1621. He established his son, Robert Gorges, by grant at Nahant and Boston, in 1622. After this he planted Agamenticus, and when Christopher Levett came over in 1623 for the purpose of fixing on a place of settlement, he found that Monhegan Pemaquid and Cape Newagan had been already taken up, and he selected the Peninsula of Machegonne, now the site of the City of Portland, for himself. There he built his house, and gave to what is now known as Fore River, his own name, calling it Levett's River. The Cape Anne settlement was made in 1625, under a charter from Lord Sheffield, but not continued; and finally, the

1. See appendix F.

2. Hazard, Vol. i. p. 293.





Company of Massachusetts Bay came over in 1629, whose men of deed and daring finally overrun the whole of New England, and led Gorges to predict the final separation of their Government from that of the British Crown. He says, "some of the discreeter sort, to avoid what they found themselves subject unto, made use of their friends to procure from the Council for the Affairs of New England to settle a Colony within their limits; to which it pleased the thrice-honored Lord of Warwick to write to me, then at Plymouth, to condescend that a Patent might be granted to such as then sued for it. Whereupon I gave my approbation so far forth as it might not be prejudicial to my son Robert Gorges' interests, whereof he had a Patent under the seal of the Council. Hereupon there was a grant passed as was thought reasonable; but the same was after enlarged by his Majesty, and confirmed under the great seal of England, by the authority whereof the undertaking proceeded so effectually, that in a very short time numbers of the people of all sorts flocked thither in heaps, that at last it was specially ordered by the King's command, that none should be suffered to go without license first had and obtained, and they to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance. So that what I long before prophesied, when I could hardly get any for money to reside there, was now brought to pass in a high measure. The reason of



that restraint was grounded upon the several complaints, that came out of those parts, of the divers sects and schisms, that were amongst them, all condemning the public government of the ecclesiastical state. And it was doubted that they would, in short time, wholly shake off the royal jurisdiction of the sovereign magistrate."<sup>1</sup>

Gorges seems to have reached that conviction, common to our race, at this time, that it is capable of shaping its government to the wants of the people, and that Episcopalian or Puritan theology, cannot for any length of time, find cause of difference.

He never persecuted; on the contrary, he welcomed those whose escaped Puritan persecution in New England, or those who sought refuge from priestly domination at home. He granted lands in Maine to Rev. John Wheelwright and others, who fled from Massachusetts, first into New Hampshire, and then into Maine, banished on account of errors of doctrine; and was earlier than Rhode Island in the practical adoption of unlimited freedom of opinion. That he should have suffered in the estimation of the Puritans, and be denounced by them in opprobrious terms for being a loyalist and a churchman, ought not at this time to diminish from the respect fairly due for his great services.

But for Gorges, the western continent must have fallen under the dominion of Roman Catholic

1. Briefe Narration, p. 51.



France, and Celtic civilization would have changed its destiny ; for all New England was in possession of the French prior to 1606. They had secured the favor of the savages, and held the country from Cape Malabarre to the St Lawrence. They do not seem to have been aware of the voyages of Gosnold, of Pring, or of Weymouth, though fully alive to the danger that threatened their possessions by the planting of the colony of Popham, at Sagadahoc.<sup>1</sup>

With all the efforts of Gorges, the labors of the Puritans, and the zeal of the British race, from 1606 to 1759, the French held twenty times the extent of the English territory on the continent, till the great struggle took place, one hundred years ago, on the Plains of Abraham, and the power of France passed from the continent forever.

Compare the services of Gorges with those of Wolfe, and all will agree that the claims of the former far surpass in real magnitude those of the latter. Yet the name of Wolfe is immortal, while

1. In a previous note, page 42, we have referred to the correspondence between the French Ambassador, Count De Tillieres, and the British government. In Gorges' Briefe Narration, he thus speaks of this matter :

"The French Ambassador made challenge of those territories granted us by the King, our sovereign, in the behalf of the King of France, his master, as belonging to his subjects, that by his authority were possessed thereof as a part of New France. To which I was commanded by the King to give answer to the Ambassador his claim, which was sent me from the Lord Treasurer, under the title of *Le Memorial de Monsieur Seigneur le Conte de Tillieres, Ambassadeur pour le Roy de France*. Whereupon I made so full a reply (as it seems) there was no more heard of that their claim." P. 40.





that of Gorges is comparatively unknown. As the heroic soul of Wolfe was just ready to take its flight to the world of spirits, from the field of battle, as the light had faded from his vision, his ear caught the words, "They fly!" "They fly!" "Who fly," said the dying hero. "The French," said the attendant. "What, so soon," said Wolfe; "then I die content;" and expired at the moment of victory. He knew that he had gained an undying fame.

The glory accorded to Wolfe for the conquest of Canada followed at once, as the fruits of that victory. But those like Columbus, or Gorges, who labor for their country, or for mankind in the less brilliant pursuits of peace, must wait the slow but ever faithful recorder of severe history, to do them justice.

When Columbus in old age, worn out in the service of his adopted country, died amid poverty and neglect, they placed over his grave these words, "Columbus has given a new world to the kingdom of Castile and Leon." But alas for human pride, the fame of Columbus has arisen higher and higher year by year in the admiration of men, while the Empire of Spain has passed from the Continent of America, and a weak and decaying dynasty fills the throne of Ferdinand and Isabella.

When Sir Ferdinando Gorges closed his life, in 1647, his countrymen should have placed over his





grave these words, "Gorges saved North America to England." Instead of this, a cloud of obloquy rested on his name in both countries; at home because he supported the monarchy, and in New England because he had not done homage to the Puritan Theocracy. And to this hour the meed of praise has been selfishly withheld.

1608. When George Popham, the able and accomplished Governor of the Colony at Sagadahoc, knew that the hour of his departure had come, he was consoled in the thought that his name would be imperishably connected with the history of New England, for he was the *first* of his race whose bones should be laid on American soil. Like Wolfe he says, "I die content, for my name will always be associated with the first planting of the English race in the new world; my remains will not be neglected away from the home of my fathers and my kindred." And yet to this hour, two hundred and fifty-two years from the time that Popham died, the place of his burial is unknown.<sup>1</sup>

1. While these pages are going through the press, measures are in progress to commemorate the first settlement of New England, and to preserve the memory of the man who led hither the first English Colony.

Congress having made an appropriation for a Fort at the mouth of the Kennebec—the ancient Sagadahoc—the following correspondence, copied from the files of the War Office, shows the action of the Secretary of War in the matter, and the fitness of the name selected for the new Fort, which is called FORT POPHAM:

"TO THE HON. SIMON CAMERON, SECRETARY OF WAR:—

The undersigned, citizens of Maine, respectfully request that the new



Mr. Webster said, "the record of illustrious action is safely deposited, in the universal remembrance of mankind," and while we admit the truth of this maxim, we cannot forget that the record is rarely exhibited till the generations that knew their actors had passed away. Homer's words were not listened to in his life time, nor till history and even his birth-place were forgotten. He still lives, not in history, but in his own immortal writings. The greatest names of England, Milton and Cromwell, were a by-word and a reproach for years after their death. So it has been with the Father of English

Fort to be erected at the mouth of the Kennebec river, in Maine, may be named FORT POPHAM, in honor of Capt. George Popham, brother of the learned Chief Justice Popham, of England.

Capt. George Popham, as the Governor of the first English Colony in New England, built a fort at or near the site of the proposed fort, in the year 1607, where he died, February 5, 1608, and was buried, being the first person of his race whose bones were laid beneath the soil of New England, and whose grave will be appropriately marked by the fort that rises over his place of burial.

(Signed)

JOHN A. POOR.

REUEL WILLIAMS.

*Washington, Nov, 18, 1861."*

This proposal for a name was favorably received at the Engineer Bureau, by Gen. Totten, who laid the matter before the Secretary of War.

On the 23d of November, General Cameron acted on the foregoing Petition, and entered thereon:—"Name approved.

SIMON CAMERON, *Secretary of War.*

WAR DEPARTMENT, *Washington, Nov. 23, 1861."*

A memorial stone, with an appropriate inscription, is to be inserted in the wall of this new Fort, and this event made the occasion of a public Celebration on the 29th of August, 1862, on the 255th anniversary of the Founding of Popham's Colony.



Colonization in America. Loaded with reproach by all the Pilgrim and Puritan writers of his time, his only crime was that he never countenanced persecution. The narrow and illiterate Bradford, the arrogant and bigoted Winthrop, the leading cotemporary writers of the times of Gorges, were incapable of doing justice to his motives or his conduct.

Within the last forty years, the growth and development of the English race in America, and the importance of the United States in the community of nations, have stimulated inquiry into its early history. The earliest settlement of the country, and the influences by which it was achieved, have become matters of the deepest interest. Events which were supposed to be of the least apparent moment, at the time, have influenced the direction of human affairs and permanently affected the history of the race.

Two hundred and fifty-six years ago, the first European settlement north of Florida, was made at St. Croix, in our State, by the French, with every assurance of permanently holding the Continent. In that same year, 1605, George Weymouth returned to England, after having explored the coast of Maine and of New England, not made known before, by the voyages of Gosnold and Pring. The leading minds of England, selected their place of settlement, looking simply at the natural advan-





tages of the country. From Mount Desert to Cape Elizabeth, was the fairest land, and the most inviting sea coast, that had tempted an Atlantic voyage. There, they made their first effort to plant a Colony, as the means of enlarging the dominion of their nation. The seat of Empire accidentally passed farther west, for a time, to avoid the dangers of Indian and French hostility, and in the struggle for control of the Continent between England and her Colonies, a large portion of Maine was the subject of controversy. Her position became a subordinate one in the time of the Commonwealth, and not till our day has she been able to vindicate her just position.

But we already see the initiatory steps that shall realize the idea on which the thrice honored and renowned Warwick, and the sagacious Gorges, set on foot this Empire of the West ;—and that chosen spot they selected became the seat of its power. Within the last sixteen years we have witnessed the great minds of England uniting with those of our own land, in cementing anew the ties of lineage which the the folly of an unwise ruler less than a century ago had severed. Already the iron arm of the railway has joined States and Provinces into one community of interests, and the iron locomotive departs from Casco Bay on an unbroken line of iron to the distant waters of Michigan and Huron, yet to be extended to the far distant shores of



the Pacific. A giant work, greater than the Pyramids, now spans the waters of the St. Lawrence, while the ocean has been bridged by such lines of steamers that have practically annihilated space and time in the operations of business. It was the belief of those who first planted our State, that it would be the fairest portion of America, and that the deep waters of our bays should float the richest treasures of an expanding commerce. The realization of these visions is not far distant from our day; and if the sons of Maine are true to themselves and to their State, the dawn of that day may be speedily ushered in.

As it was the foresight of Gorges that planted the Saxo-Norman race in America, so it was the wisdom of Cromwell, that saw in them the great strength of the nation. Both these great men have in their own time suffered from the persecutions of their enemies, so that a future age only could do justice to their memories. Gorges, a devoted royalist, a persistent friend of the Stuart dynasty, has been as obnoxious to Puritan prejudice, as was Cromwell and the Independents, to that of the restored monarchy and its followers. But Gorges' fame shall yet eclipse that of any other name in our American annals. My native State has been remiss in the discharge of this duty, and supinely allowed the history of New England to cluster around the Rock of Plymouth instead of standing clearly



out in the earlier deeds of the great minds that saved New England and the Continent from the grasp of the French.

The high position and character of Gorges are vouched by his intimacy with the Chief Justice of England, and the chief noblemen of the realm, whose confidence he enjoyed to the close of his long and illustrious life, and his entire freedom from intolerance is shown in every act. His ambition was to people these realms with the best countrymen of England, though he foresaw their early independence of the Crown, and though a zealous Episcopalian, he gave equal encouragement to Puritan and Churchmen.

If the greatness of an individual is to be measured by his influence, on human affairs, the name of Gorges should be ranked with that of Cromwell and of Peter the Great of Russia, the men who have exerted most influence in shaping the history of modern times. The English, or Saxo-Norman race less than 5,000,000 in 1620, to-day is supreme on the ocean, and holds one-sixth of the habitable globe. It governs one-fourth part of the human race, four times in number the population of the Roman Empire when its eagles overshadowed the world.

The strength of a nation like that of an individual, is its history, and while we recount with pride the deeds of the great men who have preceded us,



we should reflect on the value to us, of that larger theatre on which we are called to act, nor forget him whose genius and fidelity planted the English race in America. While this Saxo-Norman race learns more and more, and day by day sympathise with whatever is good and true in old England, we find in England's great men a corresponding sympathy with whatever is worthy of respect in the New England of our day so well expressed by Mr. D'Israeli, in a speech at Aylesbury, in the last Parliamentary election: "Whatever may be the fate of the England of the old world," said D'Israeli, "all that she has accomplished for good, in art, science, or political economy, and all that is glorious in her history, her literature or her institutions, is destined to still higher development in the hands of that race she has planted, springing from our loins, and enjoying a common ancestry with us, on the distant shores of New England and Australia.





# APPENDIX A.

---

## *The FIRST CHARTER of VIRGINIA.*

JAMES, by the Grace of God, King of *England, Scotland, France and Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. WHEREAS our loving and well-disposed Subjects, Sir *Thomas Gates*, and Sir *George Somers*, Knights, *Richard Hackluit*, Clerk, Prebendary of *Westminster*, and *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, *Thomas Hanham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, Esqrs. *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, Gentlemen, and divers others of our loving Subjects, have been humble Suitors unto Us, that We would vouchsafe unto them our Licence, to make Habitation, Plantation, and to deduce a colony of sundry of our People into that part of *America* commonly called *VIRGINIA*, and other parts and Territories in *America*, either appertaining unto us, or which are not now actually possessed by any *Christian* Prince or People, situate, lying, and being all along the Sea Coasts, between four and thirty Degrees of *Northerly* Latitude from the Equinoctial Line, and five and forty Degrees of the same Latitude, and in the main Land between the same four and thirty and five and forty Degrees, and the Islands thereunto adjacent, or within one hundred Miles of the Coast thereof;

And to that End, and for the more speedy Accomplishment of their said intended Plantation and Habitation there, are desirous to divide themselves into two several Colonies and Companies; the one consisting of certain Knights, Gentlemen, Merchants, and other Adventurers, of our City of *London* and elsewhere, which are, and from time to time shall be, joined unto them, which do desire to begin their Plantation and Habitation in some fit and convenient Place, between four and thirty and one and forty Degrees of the said Latitude, alongst the Coasts of *Virginia*, and the Coasts of *America* aforesaid: And the other consisting of sundry Knights, Gentlemen, Merchants, and other Adventurers, of our Cities of *Bristol* and *Exeter*, and of our Town of *Plimouth*, and of other Places, which do join themselves unto that Colony, which do desire to begin their Plantation and Habitation in some fit and convenient Place, between eight and thirty Degrees and five and forty Degrees of the said Latitude, all alongst the said Coasts of *Virginia* and *America*, as that Coast lyeth:

We, greatly commending, and graciously accepting of, their Desires for the Furtherance of so noble a Work, which may, by the Providence of Almighty God, hereafter tend to the Glory of his Divine Majesty, in propagating of *Christian* Religion to such People, as yet live in Darkness and miserable Ignorance of the true Knowledge and Worship of God, and may in time bring the Infidels and Savages, living in those parts, to human Civility, and to a settled and quiet Government: DO, by these our Letters Patents, graciously accept of, and agree to, their humble and well-intended Desires;

And do therefore, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors GRANT and agree, that the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, and *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, Adventurers of and for our City of *London*, and all such others, as are, or shall be, joined unto them of that Colony, shall be called the *first Colony*; And they shall and may begin their said first Plantation and Habitation, at any Place upon the said Coast of *Virginia* or *America*, where they shall think fit and convenient, between the said four and thirty and one and forty Degrees of the said Latitude; And that they shall have all the Lands, Woods, Soil, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Mines, Minerals, Marshes, Waters, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the said first Sent of their Plantation and Habitation by the Space of fifty Miles of *English* Statute Measure, all along the said Coast of *Virginia* and *America*, towards the *West* and *Southwest*, as the Coast lyeth, with all the Islands within one hundred Miles directly over against



the same Sea Coast; And also all the Lands, Soil, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Mines, Minerals, Woods, Waters, Marshes, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the said Place of their first Plantation and Habitation for the Space of fifty like *English Miles*, all alongst the said Coasts of *Virginia*, and *America*, towards the *East* and *Northeast*, or towards the *North*, as the Coast lyeth, together with all the Islands within one hundred Miles, directly over against the said Sea Coast; And also all the Lands, Woods, Soil, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Mines, Minerals, Marshes, Waters, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the same fifty Miles every way on the Sea Coast, directly into the main Land by the Space of one hundred like *English Miles*; And shall and may inhabit and remain there; and shall and may also build and fortify within any the same, for their better Safeguard and Defence, according to their best Discretion, and the Discretion of the Council of that Colony; And that no other of our Subjects shall be permitted, or suffered, to plant or inhabit behind, or on the Backside of them, towards the main Land, without the Express License or Consent of the Council, of that Colony, thereunto in Writing first had and obtained.

And we do likewise, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, by these Presents, GRANT and agree, that the said *Thomas Ingham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, and all others of the Town of *Plimouth* in the County of *Dixon* or elsewhere, which are, or shall be, joined unto them of that Colony, shall be called the *second Colony*; And that they shall and may begin their said Plantation and Seat of their first Abode and Habitation, at any Place upon the said Coast of *Virginia* and *America*, where they shall think fit and convenient, between eight and thirty Degrees of the said Latitude, and five and forty Degrees of the same Latitude; And that they shall have all the Lands, Soils, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Mines, Minerals, Woods, Marshes, Waters, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the first Seat of their Plantation and Habitation by the Space of fifty like *English Miles*, as is aforesaid, all alongst the said Coasts of *Virginia* and *America*, towards the *West* and *Southwest*, or towards the *South*, as the Coast lyeth, and all the Islands within one hundred Miles, directly over against the said Sea Coast; And also all the Lands, Soils, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Mines, Minerals, Woods, Marshes, Waters, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the said Place of their first Plantation and Habitation for the Space of fifty like miles, all alongst the said Coast of *Virginia* and *America*, towards the *East* and *Northeast*, or towards the *North*, as the Coast lyeth, and all the Islands also within one hundred Miles directly over against the same Sea Coast; And also all the Lands, Soils, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Woods, Mines, Minerals, Marshes, Waters, Fishings, Commodities, and Hereditaments, whatsoever, from the same fifty Miles every way on the Sea Coast, directly into the main Land, by the Space of one hundred like *English Miles*; And shall and may inhabit and remain there; and shall and may also build and fortify within any the same for their better Safeguard, according to their best Discretion, and the Discretion of the Council of that Colony; And that none of our Subjects shall be permitted, or suffered, to plant or inhabit behind, or on the back of them, towards the main Land, without express Licence of the Council of that Colony, in Writing thereunto first had and obtained.

Provided always, and our Will and Pleasure herein is, that the Plantation and Habitation of such of the said Colonies, as shall last plant themselves, as aforesaid, shall not be made within one hundred like *English Miles* of the other of them, that first began to make their Plantation, as aforesaid.

And we do also ordain, establish, and agree, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, that each of the said Colonies shall have a Council, which shall govern and order all Matters and Causes, which shall arise, grow, or happen, to or within the same several Colonies, according to such Laws, Ordinances, and Instructions as shall be, in that behalf, given and signed with Our Hand or Sign Manual, and pass under the Privy Seal of our Realm of *England*; Each of which Councils shall consist of thirteen Persons, to be ordained, made, and removed, from time to time, according as shall be directed and comprised in the same Instructions; And shall have a several Seal, for all Matters that shall pass or concern the same several Councils; Each of which Seals, shall have the King's Arms engraven on the one side thereof, and his Portraiture on the other; And that the Seal for the Council of the said first Colony shall have engraven round about, on the one side, these Words: *Sigillum Regis Magnæ Britannie, Francie, & Hibernie*; on the other side this Inscription round about: *Pro Concilio prime Colonie Virginiae*. And the Seal for the Council of the said second Colony shall also have engraven, round about the one side thereof, the aforesaid Words: *Sigillum Regis Magnæ Britannie, Francie, & Hibernie*; and on the other side: *Pro Concilio secundæ Colonie Virginiae*.

And that also there shall be a Council established here in *England*, which shall, in like Manner, consist of thirteen Persons, to be, for that Purpose, appointed by Us, our Heirs and Successors, which shall be called our Council of *Virginia*; And shall, from time to time, have the superior Management and Direction, only



of and for all Matters that shall or may concern the Government, as well of the said several Colonies, as of and for any other Part or Place, within the aforesaid Precincts of four and thirty and five and forty Degrees, abovementioned; Which Council shall, in like manner, have a Seal, for Matters concerning the Council or Colonies, with the like Arms and Portraiture, as aforesaid, with this Inscription, engraven round about on the one side: *Sigillum Regis Magnæ Britannie, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ*; and round about on the other side, *Pro Concilio suo Virginie*.

And moreover, we do GRANT and agree, for Us, our Heirs and Successors; that the said several Councils of and for the said several Colonies, shall and lawfully may, by Virtue hereof, from time to time, without any Interruption of Us, our Heirs or Successors, give and take Order, to dig, mine, and search for all Manner of Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper, as well within any Part of their said several Colonies, as of the said main Lands on the Backside of the same Colonies; And to HAVE and enjoy the Gold, Silver, and Copper, to be gotten thereof, to the Use and Behoof of the same Colonies, and the Plantations thereof; YIELDING therefore to Us, our Heirs and Successors, the fifth Part only of all the same Gold and Silver, and the fifteenth Part of all the same Copper, so to be gotten or had, as is aforesaid, without any other Manner of Profit or Account, to be given or yielded to Us, our Heirs, or Successors, for or in Respect of the same.

And that they shall, or lawfully may, establish and cause to be made a Coin, to pass current there between the people of those several Colonies, for the more Ease of Traffick and Bargaining between and amongst them and the Natives there, of such Metal, and in such Manner and Form, as the said several Councils there shall limit and appoint.

And we do likewise, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, by these Presents, give full Power and Authority to the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, *Thomas Hanham*, *Ralegh Gilbert*, *William Parker* and *George Popham* and to every of them, and to the said several Companies, Plantations, and Colonies, that they, and every of them, shall and may, at all and every time and times hereafter, have, take, and lead in the said Voyage, and for and towards the said several Plantations, and Colonies, and to travel thitherward, and to abide and inhabit there, in every the said Colonies and Plantations, such and so many of our Subjects, as shall willingly accompany them or any of them, in the said Voyages and Plantations; With sufficient Shipping, and Furniture of Armour, Weapons, Ordinance, Powder, Victual, and all other things, necessary for the said Plantations, and for their Use and Defence there: PROVIDED always, that none of the said Persons be such, as shall hereafter be specially restrained by Us, our Heirs, or Successors.

Moreover, we do, by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, GIVE AND GRANT Licence unto the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, *Thomas Hanham*, *Ralegh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, and to every of the said Colonies, that they, and every of them, shall and may, from time to time, and at all times forever hereafter, for their several Defences, encounter, expulse, repel, and resist, as well by Sea as by Land, by all Ways and Means whatsoever, all and every such Person and Persons, as without the especial Licence of the said several Colonies and Plantations, shall attempt to inhabit within the said several Precincts and Limits of the said several Colonies and Plantations, or any of them, or that shall enterprise or attempt, at any time hereafter, the Hurt, Detriment, or Annoyance, of the said several Colonies or Plantations:

Giving and granting, by these Presents, unto the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, and their Associates of the said first Colony, and unto the said *Thomas Hanham*, *Ralegh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, and their Associates of the said second Colony, and to every of them, from time to time, and at all times for ever hereafter, Power and Authority to take and surprise, by all Ways and Means whatsoever, all and every Person and Persons, with their Ships, Vessels, Goods, and other Furniture, shall be found trafficking, into any Harbour or Harbours, Creek or Creeks, or Place, within the Limits or Precincts of the said several Colonies and Plantations, not being of the same Colony, until such time, as they, being of any Realm or Dominions under our Obedience, shall pay, or agree to pay, to the Hands of the Treasurer of that Colony, within whose Limits and Precincts they shall so traffick, two and a half upon every Hundred, of any thing, so by them trafficked, bought, or sold; And being Strangers, and not Subjects under our Obedience, until they shall pay five upon every Hundred, of such Wares and Merchandises, as they shall traffick, buy, or sell, within the Precincts of the said several Colonies, wherein they shall so traffick, buy, or sell, as aforesaid: With Sums of Money, or Benefit, as aforesaid, for and during the Space of one and twenty Years, next ensuing the Date hereof, shall be wholly employed to the Use, Benefit, and Behoof of the said several Plantations, where such Traffick shall be made: And after the said one and twenty Years ended, the same shall be taken to the Use of Us, our Heirs, and Successors, by such Officers and Ministers, as by Us, our Heirs, and Successors, shall be thereunto assigned or appointed.





And we do further, by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, GIVE AND GRANT unto the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, and *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, and to their Associates of the said first Colony and Plantation, and to the said *Thomas Hanham*, *Ralegh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, and their Associates of the said second Colony and Plantation, that they, and every of them, by their Deputies, Ministers, and Factors, may transport the Goods, Chattels, Armour, Munition, and Furniture, needful to be used by them, for their said Apparel, Food, Defence, or otherwise in Respect of the said Plantations, out of our Realms of *England* and *Ireland*, and all other our Dominions, from time to time, for and during the Time of seven Years, next ensuing the Date hereof, for the better Relief of the said several Colonies and Plantations, without any Customs, Subsidy, or other Duty, unto Us, our Heirs, or Successors, to be yielded or payed for the same.

Also we do, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, DECLARE, by these Presents, that all and every the Persons being our Subjects, which shall dwell and inhabit within every or any of the said several Colonies and Plantations, and every of their Children, which shall happen to be born within any of the Limits and Precincts of the said several Colonies and Plantations, shall HAVE and enjoy all Liberties, Franchises and Immunities, within any of our other Dominions, to all Intents and Purposes, as if they had been abiding and born, within this our Realm of *England*, or any other of our said Dominions.

Moreover, our gracious Will and Pleasure is, and we do, by these Presents, for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, declare and set forth, that if any Person or Persons, which shall be of any of the said Colonies and Plantations, or any other, which shall traffick to the said Colonies and Plantations, or any of them, shall, at any time, or times hereafter, transport any Wares, Merchandises, or Commodities, out of any of our Dominions, with a Pretence to land, sell, or otherwise dispose of the same, within any the Limits and precincts of any of the said Colonies and Plantations, and yet nevertheless, being at Sea, or after he hath landed the same within any of the said Colonies and Plantations, shall carry the same into any other foreign Country, with a purpose there to sell or dispose of the same, without the Licence of Us, our Heirs, and Successors, in that Behalf first had and obtained; That then, all the Goods and Chattels of such Person or Persons, so offending and transporting, together with the said Ship or Vessel wherein such Transportation was made, shall be forfeited to Us, our Heirs, and Successors.

Provided always, and our Will and Pleasure is, and we do hereby declare to all Christian Kings, Princes, and States, that if any Person or Persons which shall hereafter be of any of the said several Colonies and Plantations, or any other, by his, their, or any of their Licence and Appointment, shall, at any Time or Times hereafter, rob or spoil, by Sea or Land, or do any Act of unjust or unlawful Hostility to any the Subjects of Us, our Heirs, or Successors, or any the Subjects of any King, Prince, Ruler, Governor, or State, being then in League or Amity with Us, our Heirs, or Successors, and that upon such injury, or upon just Complaint of such Prince, Ruler, Governor, or State, or their Subjects, We, our Heirs, or Successors, shall make open Proclamation, within any of the Ports of our Realm of *England*, commodious for that purpose, That the said Person or Persons, having committed any such Robbery, or Spoil, shall within the term to be limited by such Proclamations, make full Restitution or Satisfaction of all such Injuries done, so as the said Princes, or others so complaining, may hold themselves fully satisfied and contented; And, that if the said Person or Persons, having committed such Robbery or Spoil, shall not make, or cause to be made Satisfaction accordingly, within such Time, so to be limited, That then it shall be lawful to Us, our Heirs, and Successors, to put the said Person or Persons, having committed such Robbery or Spoil, and their Procurers, Abettors, and Comforters, out of our Allegiance and Protection; And that it shall be lawful and free, for all Princes, and others to pursue with hostility the said offenders, and every of them, and their and every of their Procurers, Aiders, abettors, and comforters, in that behalf.

And finally, we do for Us, our Heirs, and Successors, GRANT and agree, to and with the said Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, *Richard Hackluit*, *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, and all others of the said first colony, that We, our Heirs and Successors, upon Petition in that Behalf to be made, shall, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal of *England*, GIVE and GRANT unto such Persons, their Heirs and Assigns, as the Council of that Colony, or the most part of them, shall, for that Purpose, nominate and assign all the Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, which shall be within the Precincts limited for that Colony, as is aforesaid, To be HOLDEN of Us, our heirs and Successors, as of our Manor of *East-Greenwich*, in the County of *Kent*, in free and common Socage only, and not in Capite:

And do in like Manner, Grant and Agree, for Us, our Heirs and Successors, to and with the said *Thomas Hanham*, *Ralegh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, and all others of the said second Colony, That We, our Heirs, and Successors, upon Petition in that Behalf to be made, shall, by Letters-Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, GIVE and GRANT, unto such Persons, their Heirs and



Assigns, as the Council of that Colony, or the most Part of them, shall for that Purpose nominate and assign, all the Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, which shall be within the Precincts limited for that Colony, as is aforesaid, To be HOLDEN of Us, our Heirs, and Successors, as of our Manor of *East-Greenwich*, in the County of *Kent*, in free and common Socage only, and not in Capite.

All which Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, so to be passed by the said several Letters-patent, shall be sufficient Assurance from the said Patentees, so distributed and divided amongst the Undertakers for the Plantation of the said several Colonies, and such as shall make their Plantations in either of the said several Colonies, in such Manner and Form, and for such Estates, as shall be ordered and set down by the Council of the said Colony, or the most part of them, respectively, within which the same Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments shall lye or be; Although express Mention of the true yearly Value or Certainty of the Premises, or any of them, or of any other Gifts or Grants, by Us or any of our Progenitors or Predecessors, to the aforesaid Sir *Thomas Gates*, Knt. Sir *George Somers*, Knt. *Richard Hackluit*, *Edward-Maria Wingfield*, *Thomas Hanham*, *Raleigh Gilbert*, *William Parker*, and *George Popham*, or any of them, heretofore made, in these Presents, is not made; Or any Statute, Act, Ordinance, or Provision, Proclamation, or Restraint, to the contrary hereof had, made, ordained, or any other Thing, Cause, or Matter whatsoever, in any wise notwithstanding. IN WITNESS whereof, we have caused these our Letters to be made Patent; Witness Ourself at *Westminster*, the tenth Day of *April*, in the fourth Year of our Reign of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, and of *Scotland*, the nine and thirtieth.

*Lukin*

*Per breve de privato Sigillo.*

---

## APPENDIX B.

---

### RELATIONS OF THE JESUITS,

Containing the most remarkable events in the Mission of the Company of Jesus in NEW FRANCE.

AN ACCOUNT OF NEW FRANCE; the land, nature of the country, and its inhabitants, from a copy preserved in the Imperial Library of Paris.

CHAPTER I. What country New France is, and those who first sought to inhabit it.—pp. 1-3.

CHAP. II. Of the weather, the seasons, and the temperature of New France. pp. 3-6.

CHAP. III. Of the land, of its inhabitants and its productions.—pp. 6-8.

CHAP. IV. Of the character of the Savages, of their clothes, their dwellings and their food.—pp. 8-11.

CHAP. V. Of the polity and government of the Savages.—pp. 11-13.

CHAP. VI. Of their marriages and the small population of the country.—pp. 13-16.

CHAP. VII. Of their system of medicine.—pp. 16-18.

CHAP. VIII. Of their wills, their obsequies in their burials and their religion. pp. 18-20.

CHAP. IX. Of the means of aiding them toward their eternal salvation.—pp. 20-21.

CHAP. X. Of the necessity of thoroughly catechising them before baptizing them.—pp. 21-24.



CHAP. XI. On what occasion the Jesuits went to New France in 1611, and what the French had done there from 1608 until their coming.—pp. 24-27.

CHAP. XII. The difficulties which arose at Dieppe and how they were relieved. pp. 27-28.

CHAP. XIII. The voyage and their arrival at Port Royal.—pp. 28-29.

CHAP. XIV. The condition of the Lord De Poutrineourt when they arrived and his voyage to the Etchemins.—pp. 29-30.

CHAP. XV. The return of De Potrineourt to France, and the difficulty of teaching the savages.—pp. 30-32.

CHAP. XVI. Voyage to St. Croix, and death of Membertou.—pp. 32-35.

CHAP. XVII. Voyage to St. John and their quarrel there.—pp. 33-35.

CHAP. XVIII. Voyage to Quinnebequi and return to Port Royal.—35-38.

CHAP. XIX. How the Marchioness of Guerschville obtained from the King the land of New France, and the aid she sent them.—38-39.

CHAP. XX. The commencement of disputes between Lord Biencourt and the Jesuits and the causes thereof. The charge against Gilbert Du Thet and his defence.—pp. 39-40.

CHAP. XXI. The voyage of Father Enemond and another by Father Biard. pp. 40-42.

CHAP. XXII. What happened in the winter and spring of 1613.—pp. 42-43.

CHAP. XXIII. The arrival of Saussaye at Port Royal, and from thence to St. Saviour.—43-44.

CHAP. XXIV. The reason for stopping at St. Saviour, and the beauty of the place.—pp. 44-46.

CHAP. XXV. Our capture by the English.—46-48.

CHAP. XXVI. The capture of our vessel and people and our sufferings.—pp. 48-50.

CHAP. XXVII. The expedition to return to France, and how thirty of our people arrived there after much labor.—pp. 50-52.

CHAP. XXVIII. Voyage to Virginia and thence to New France.—pp. 52-53.

CHAP. XXIX. Capture and burning of Port Royal. Dangerous adventures of Father Biard.—pp. 53-56.

CHAP. XXX. Departure from Port Royal; difficult adventures of the ships, and how we were forced to part with the cargoes.—56-58.

CHAP. XXXI. How the ship was wrecked at the Azores, and the good faith of the Jesuits towards the English.—pp. 58-59.

CHAP. XXXII. Coming to England and the release of the Jesuits.—pp. 59-60.

CHAP. XXXIII. Of the return of Sire De Lamothe, of Capt. Flory and some others, and the surrender of the ship.—pp. 60-61.

CHAP. XXXIV. The advance of the Christian Religion in New France.—pp. 61-63.

CHAP. XXXV. Of the miracles God wrought in the cause of the savages.—pp. 63-64.

CHAP. XXXVI. Of the right of the French to appropriate to themselves New France as against the English.—pp. 64-67.

CHAP. XXXVII. Reasons for the settlement of New France.—pp. 67-68.

Printed by Louis MOUTET, Lyons, June 23, 1616.

## EXTRACTS:

### CHAPTER XI.

*On what account the Jesuits went to New France in 1611, and what the French had done there from 1608 until their coming.*

"It has been narrated, how at the end of the said year 1607, all the train of Sr. de Monts, returned to France, and this New France was then entirely abandoned by the French. Nevertheless, the following year, 1608, Sr. de Monts appointed Sr. Champlain his Lieutenant, and sent him to explore along the great river St. Lawrence. Champlain did bravely there, and founded the city of Quebec. But as to the acts, voyages and discoveries of the said Champlain, there is no need to paint them to you, since he himself has so well and so long described them in his books.

Now Sr. Jean de Biencourt, called de Potrineourt, before Sr. de Monts had left New France, had asked him for the gift of Port Royal. Sr. de Monts gave it to him on condition that within the two following years, the said de Potrineourt





should transport himself there with several families to cultivate, and inhabit it which he promised to do.

Then in 1607, all the French having returned, as above stated, Sr. de Potrin-court informed the late Henry the Great, of immortal memory, of the deed of gift made to him by Sr. de Mouts, humbly petitioning his Majesty to ratify it. The King was pleased with the said petition, and promising himself to send a powerful French Colony. He said to Father Coton that he wished to make use of this Company for the conversion of the savages; that he should write about it to the Father General, and that some should be designated for these voyages; that he would call on them, on the first opportunity, promising from this time 2000 livres for their support.

Father Coton obeyed his Majesty, and soon through all the Colleges of France, it was heard that some should be chosen for this mission. Many presented themselves to join the band, as usual in such expeditions of much hardships and little glory; and among others, Father Pierre Biard, then teaching Theology at Lyons. It was God's will that the said Father should be chosen and sent to Bordeaux at the end of 1608, because at Lyons they thought that as the project of so powerful a Prince had been known for so many months, its execution could not but be near. But Father Biard was as much deceived in the place as the time. For, at Bordeaux they were astonished when they heard why he had come. No news of the embarking for Canada, or of the past cheek, upon which every one philosophized in his own fashion.

At the end of the following year, 1609, Sr. de Potrin-court came to Paris, when his Majesty learned that, contrary to his opinion, the said Nobleman had not stirred from France, (for the King believed that he had crossed the sea as soon as he had obtained confirmation of Port Royal.) He was angry with him. Deeply touched at that, the Nobleman replied, that since his Majesty had the affair so much at heart, from that moment he would take leave of him, and go to equip the expedition. Then Father Coton, who was anxious about Father Biard, and the great summons he had made in the name of the King, knowing that Potrin-court had taken leave of the King, went to find Potrin-court and offered him the company of several members of his order. He received the reply, that it would be better to wait till the following year; that as soon as he had arrived at Port Royal, he would send back his son to France; and that, with him, everything being better arranged, those might go whom the King should please to send. At this, he left Paris and spent the winter in preparation.

The following year, 1610, he embarked, towards the last of February, and arrived late at Port Royal, viz: at the beginning of June, when having assembled as many savages as he could, he caused to be baptized about 21 or 25 of them on St. John's day, by a priest named Josse Flesehe, entitled the Patriarch. Shortly after he sent back to France Sr. de Biencourt, his son, about 19 years old, to carry the news of the baptism of the savages, and to bring back succor speedily, for they were unprovided against hunger for the coming winter."

Then follows a minute account of the difficulties in fitting out their ships and supplying the Jesuits, and obtaining leave for them to go on board, but at last they sailed on the 26th January, 1611, and reached Port Royal the 22d of June, 1611, Pentecost day. Then he describes the life of the Jesuits on shipboard, and then comes

#### CHAPTER XIV.

*The condition of Sr. de Potrin-court at their arrival, and his journey to the Etchemins.*

"The joy at our arrival was great on both sides; great to the new comers, from the fatigue of so long a sea-voyage, but redoubled to Sr. de Potrin-court, who had been in great trouble and anxiety all the winter. Having with him 23 persons without sufficient provisions to support them, he had been obliged to send away some of them to live with the savages. The rest had been wanting bread for six or seven weeks, and without the help of the savages he did not know but they would all have perished miserably.

How the aid he brought them was almost, one may say, like a drop of water to a thirsting one: first because there were 36 in one ship, which, added to the 23 persons there, 59 mouths found themselves every day at table, and also Memberton, the savage, with his daughter and her companions; Second, we had been four months at sea, and thus our provisions were much diminished. Seeing also that our vessel was very small, about 50 or 60 tons, and provisioned more for fishing than for anything else. In this situation then, it was rather necessary for Sr. de Potrin-court to think how he should promptly send back so large a family, lest they should consume everything, than to obtain fishing and barter, in which, nevertheless lay every resource for a second voyage. But they did not wholly neglect bartering, for it was necessary to make some money to pay the wages of his men, and their coming and going to France.





For these purposes then, he sailed in his own ship, some days after, with almost all his people, for a port of the Etchemins, called the White Rock, 22 leagues due west from Port Royal. He hoped to find there some help of provisions from the French ships which he knew traded there. Father Biard wished to accompany him to explore the country and discover the character of the natives, which was granted him. He found there four French vessels; one belonging to Sr. de Monts, one from Rochelle, one from St. Malo belonging to du Pont Grave, and commanded by a relative of his called Captain La Salie, of whom we shall soon speak, and another bark from St. Malo. Sr. de Potrineourt, calling each one of these four after the other, caused them to acknowledge his son for Vice Admiral; and then asked them for assistance, showing the need to which he had been reduced the last winter, promising to repay them in France. Each one contributed. But God pardon the men from Rochelle; for he deceived the Exeise, and gave us barrels of spoiled bread for good." Then comes an account of the pardon of Sir Pont Du Grave, and then

## CHAPTER XV.

*The return of Sr. de Potrineourt to France, and the difficulty of teaching the language to the Savages.*

"He explained above the necessity which pressed upon Sr. de Potrineourt to send his people immediately back to France. He wished to conduct them in person in order to make better arrangements for everything, and principally for a new revictualling; for without this, those left behind at Port Royal, would have no means of passing the winter in manifest danger of being pierced by famine. For this cause then, he sailed about the middle of July of the same year, 1611, and arrived in France at the end of the August following. He left his son in his place, Sr. de Potrineourt, with two persons including the two Jesuits."

Then is a long account of the difficulty of teaching the language to the natives. Then we resume.

"One expedient presented itself to the Jesuits to rid them happily of all these perplexities; it was to find young du Pont Grave, whom they had heard had resolved to winter at the river St. Johns, some 18 or 20 leagues from Port Royal. Inasmuch as the said du Pont Grave had lived a long time in the country, and among the natives, it was thought that he must understand the language very well. Father Biard resolved to seek the said du Pont Grave, determining rather to pass French Bay in a canoe than to lose such an opportunity of doing good. But Sr. de Biencourt opposed strongly this determination, taking great offence, to which it was necessary to yield for peace."

## CHAPTER XVI.

*A voyage made to the river St. Croix, and the death of the Sagamore Membertou.*

"At the end of August of the same year, 1611, Sr. de Biencourt having heard that the ship of Captain Plastrier of Houlleur, was fishing at Port aux Coquilles, (Shell Harbor,) 21 leagues west from Port Royal, decided to go and find him in order to introduce to him one of his men whom he was sending to France to hasten the expected aid, and to represent how pitiable their condition was. Father Biard accompanied him, and they met the ship so apropos, that if they had been a quarter of an hour later, the favorable opportunity would have been lost, for already he had set sail for France. He learned that Captain Plastrier had decided to pass the winter at St. Croix. This news decided Sr. de Biencourt to go to St. Croix on this very passage, before Captain Plastrier should fortify himself there, for he wished to obtain from him the fifth of all his trade and merchandise, because he wintered in the country. St. Croix is 6 leagues from Port aux Coquilles in the middle of a river. Sr. de Biencourt went there accompanied by 8 persons, and entered armed, having left Father Biard on one end of the Island. \* \* \* \* Thanks to God, everything passed off happily. Plastrier treated us as well as he could; by his aid Sr. de Biencourt recovered a bark which was at Port aux Coquilles, with which he returned to Port Royal." \* \* \* \*

Then the account of the death of Membertou. Then

## CHAPTER XVII.

*The journey to the river St. John, and the quarrels that came of it.*

"I said above, that Sr. de Biencourt brought a bark from Port aux Coquilles, with which he might make a voyage to the Armouchiquois. So are called the people who are at the 43<sup>d</sup> lower down towards the south west. They begin at



Chouaquet, and from what is said, they are very numerous. Famine pressed Sr. de Biencourt to this voyage; because as these people worked and stored grain, he hoped by means of barter or otherwise, to draw some help from them against the famine, who was waiting for us in the winter. His bark was prepared too late for so long a voyage, for we were not ready till the 3d October, and he still wished to go to the river St. John before taking the former route. The river St. John is at northeast of Port Royal having between the two, French Bay, 14 leagues wide. The entrance of this river is very narrow and exceedingly dangerous, for it is necessary to pass between two rocks, one of which throws upon the other the current of the tide, which is swift as an arrow. To the rocks succeeds a frightful precipice, which, if you do not pass at the precise time, out of a hundred thousand barques, not a hair will escape, but dies and property will perish. Young du Pont Grave and Captain Merbeville had settled some 6 leagues within the St. John, being in all seven or eight persons, all from St. Malo. Sr. de Biencourt wished to obtain from them the fifth of all their merchandise, because they lived in the country as we have said. On this account he had mistaken the journey. We were in all 16 Frenchmen and 2 natives as guides."

Then an account of the skirmish and the submission of du Pont Grave and Merbeville.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### *The voyage to Quinibié and the return to Port Royal.*

"We remarked above that this voyage to the St. John was only a detour from the greater expedition to the Armouchiquois to get corn. When we had thus acted with the Malhouins we set sail taking the route towards the Armouchiquois. We arrived at Kinibié at the end of October. Kinibié is a river near the Armouchiquois, 43½ degrees of elevation, and Southeast of Port Royal 70 leagues or thereabouts. It has two mouths, tolerably large, at least two leagues distant the one from the other; also many inlets and islands which divide it. For the rest, though the river is large and beautiful, we saw no good land, nor neither at the St. John. It is said, however, that above, far from the sea, the land is very fine, and the situation pleasant, and people work there. We did not ascend more than 3 leagues. We made so many quick turns, and leaped so many precipices, that it is a great miracle that we had not perished, several times. Some of our men cried two different times that they were lost: but they cried too soon, the Lord be praised. The savages flattered us with the hope of grain, then they changed their promise of grain into barter of beavers."

Then follows an account of the entrance of the natives to the ship.

"This tribe does not appear to be mischievous or malicious, although they defeated and overthrew the English who wished to settle among them in 1605 and 1609. They excused themselves to us for this, and related the outrages that they had suffered from the aforesaid English, and flattered us, saying they loved us well, because they knew that we would not shut our doors on the savages as the English, nor chase them from our table with clubs, nor let our dogs bite them. They are not thieves like the Armouchiquois, and they are the greatest speech-makers in the world: they do nothing without that. Father Biard went twice to see them, and (as he did everywhere) prayed to God in their presence, and showed them images, and the signes of our faith, which they kissed willingly, making the sign of the Holy Cross on their children, whom they offered to him that he might baptise them, and heard with attention and respect what was told them.

We were at Kinibié till the 4th or 5th of November, a season too advanced for us to go farther according to our first plan. That is why Sr. de Biencourt returned, the more because he thought it better to endure the winter and the famine at Port Royal, being well lodged and warmed there, and trusting the mercy of God, than risking ourselves on the ocean, in a stormy season, among savages and enemies, having beside, hunger to fear, for our provisions commenced to fail greatly; thus then, we turned towards Pentagoët to return from there to Port Royal.

At Pentagoët we found a fleet of 80 Indian canoes, and one shallop, in all about 300 souls. From there we passed on to the Island of St. Croix, where Plastrier gave us 2 barrels of peas or beans; both were a very great present for us. \* \*

While we were on the voyage no one remained at the settlement at Port Royal except Father Enemond Masse and a young Parisian called Valentino Paegan. \* \* \*

Snow began the 26th of November and with it, (which annoyed us most,) the retrenchment of provisions. They gave to each person for the whole week only about 10 ounces of bread, ½ pound of lard, 3 porringers full of peas or beans and one of dried prunes. The Jesuits had never more, nor other than each one of the company, and it is an impudent falsehood which some disturber alleges to the



contrary. All this time, the savages did not come to see us, except occasionally some one of the family of Membertou, to bring us some present of the chase. 'Then was joy and feasting, our people took heart a little.'

#### CHAPTER XIX.

*How the Marchioness Guerchville obtained from the King the land of New France, and the aid she procured for it.*

\* \* \* \* \* A long account. Then

"The ship thus fitted out and freighted, sailed from Dieppe the 31st of December, in the depth of winter, and happily appeared at Port Royal the 23d of January in the following year, 1612."

#### CHAPTER XX.

*The beginning of the disputes between Sr. de Biencourt and the Jesuits, and the causes of them; the accusation of Gilbert du Thet, and his defense.*

#### CHAPTER XXIII.

*Arrival of La Saussaye at Port Royal and then at St. Saviour.*

"An expedition had been prepared in France, to remove the Jesuits from Port Royal and found a new settlement of French in some more convenient place. The chief of the expedition was Captain La Saussaye with 30 persons who were to winter in the country. The ship was 100 tons and commanded by Charles Flory de Hableville, a man brave, wise and peaceable.

This prepared expedition sailed from Honfleur the 12th of March, 1613, and touched land first at Cape of the Have in Acadia, May 16th. There they celebrated Mass and raised the Cross, fastening to it the arms of Mme. de Guercheville, to show they had taken possession in her name. Then putting out to sea, they came to Port Royal. There they found only five persons. Contrary winds detained them five days at Port Royal, then a favoring northeast wind arising, we set sail, with the design of going to the river Pentagoet, to a place called Kadesquit, which we had decided upon for our new settlement, as having great advantages for this purpose. But God willed otherwise; for as we were at the Southeast of the Island of Menamo, the weather changed, and there arose on the sea so thick a fog then we could see neither day nor night. We dreaded this danger greatly, because in this place there are many breakers and rocks, against which we were afraid we would strike, in the darkness. As the wind did not permit to put to sea again, we remained in this manner, two days and two nights, tacking first to one side, then to the other, as God inspired us. This affliction disposed us to pray to God that he would be pleased to deliver us from danger, and direct us to some safe place, for his glory. Of his goodness, he heard our vows, for that evening even we began to see the stars, in the morning the fog cleared, we discovered that we were over against Mount Desert, an Island that the savages called Penctiq. The pilot turned to the eastern side of the island where we anchored in a large and beautiful harbor, and we gave thanks, raising the Cross and singing praises to God with the sacrifice of holy Mass. We called this place and harbor, St. Saviour."

#### CHAPTER XXIV.

*On what account we stopped at St. Saviour, and the beauty of the place.*

"Soon the natives made a smoke, which signified that we should seek them if we needed them. The Pilot took occasion to tell them that the Fathers from Port Royal were on board. The Savages replied that they would willingly see those whom they had known two years before, at Pentagoet: one was Father Biard, who went immediately to them and inquired about the route to Kadesquit, signifying that he wished to settle there. But said they, if you wish to settle in this part of the world, why do you not rather remain with us, who have quite as good a place as Kadesquit? And they began to sound the praises of their settlement, assuring us that it was so healthy and so agreeable, that when Savages are ill in other places, they bring them there to cure them. These commendations had no effect on Father Biard, because he knew well enough that the Savages are not wanting in what everybody else abounds, valuing one's own possessions.

But they knew how to arouse him, "for," said they, "you must come, because Asticon our Sagamore, is sick unto death, and if you do not come, he will die without baptism, and will not go to Heaven; you will be the cause. On his part,





he wishes to be baptised." This reason so simply given, astonished Father Biard and persuaded him entirely to go there, especially as there were only three leagues to go, and it would cause but little loss of time, only an afternoon. Thus he entered one of their canoes, with Sr. de La Motte and Simon the interpreter, and went.

Arrived at the cabin of Asticon, we found him ill, but not dangerously, for it was only a cold which tormented him: and we had abundant leisure to visit this place so praised, as better than Kadesquit for a French settlement, and indeed we found that the Savages had some reason for praising it so highly, for we ourselves were astonished at it. Having given an account of it to the leaders of our expedition, and they having come and examined it, all unanimously agreed that we had better stop there, and seek no further.

This place is a pretty colline rising gently from the sea and bathed on its sides by two springs. The land is grubbed for 20 or 25 acres, grassy in some places, as high as a man. Its aspect is towards the south and east, almost to the mouth of Pentagoet, where several large rivers, full of fish, discharge. The soil is black, fat and fertile. The port and haven are as fine as can be seen, and in a situation to command the entire coast: the haven especially is as safe as a pond, for beside being separated from the large island of Mount Desert, it is also separated from certain small islets which break the winds and the waves, and fortify the entrance. There is no fleet for which it would not be sufficient, nor vessel so high which it might not approach land to unload within a cable's length. Its situation is 44<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>° of elevation, less northern than that of Bordeaux.

Having landed on this spot, and planted the Cross, we began to work, and with our work began our disputes. The cause of these, was that our Captain La Saussaye amused himself too much in cultivating the earth, and all the principal men begged him not to take off our workmen for that, but to apply ourselves without delay to dwellings and fortifications, which he did not wish to do. From these quarrels sprang others, till the English came to reconcile us, as you will see."

## CHAPTER XXV.

### *Our capture by the English.*

"Virginia is that continent of the earth which the ancients called *Morosa*, between Florida and New France, at the 36°, 37°, 38° of elevation. The country was first discovered by Giovanni Verrazzani, in the name of Francis I., as we said above, but the English having claimed it since 1593 or 1594, at last came to settle there, 7 or 8 years before this time. Their principal settlement, which they call Jamestown, is distant from St. Saviour, where we were, settled about 250 leagues in a straight line. See then, if they had any reason to pick a quarrel with us.

These English, from Virginia, have the habit of coming every year to the islands of *PEMQUIT*,\* which are 25 leagues from St. Saviour, to get shell fish (*mouluques*) for the winter."

The account is condensed by Garneau in his *History of Canada*, which we give in full.

## GARNEAU'S HISTORY OF CANADA.

### EXTRACT FROM CHAPTER I.

#### *The destruction of St. Saviour and Port Royal.*

"England claimed the country to the 45° of North latitude, as far as the heart of Acadia. France, on the contrary, pretended to claim as far South as the 40°. From this strife it happened that, while La Saussaye believed himself to be within the boundaries of New France, at St. Saviour, the English said they had advanced far into their territory. To support their claim, Captain Argall of Virginia, resolved to dislodge them, spurred on by the hope of rich booty, and by his prejudices against the Catholics.

He suddenly appeared before St. Saviour, with a vessel of 14 cannon, and struck terror into the defenceless inhabitants, who took him for a pirate at first. Father Gilbert du Thet in vain opposed some resistance. He was killed and the establish-

\* Pemaquid.



ment given up to plunder. Everything was taken or sacked, Argall himself setting the example. The French clung to Acadia on account of the fisheries. The English, because it was on their route. Argall did not hesitate to attack in time of profound peace. Apart from his personal motives, he well knew the opinion of his countrymen, who wished to settle the question by taking actual possession.

To legitimatise this act of piracy, for it was so, he stole La Saussaye's commission, and affected to regard him and his people as vagabonds. Gradually he appeared to relent, and proposed to those who had trades to follow him to Jamestown, where, after having labored a year, they should be sent back to their country. One dozen accepted the offer. The others with La Saussaye and Father Masse, prepared to risk themselves upon a frail vessel, to reach the Have, where they found a ship from St. Malo, which carried them back to France.

Those who had Argall's promises, were greatly surprised on arriving at Jamestown, to find themselves thrown into prison, and treated like pirates. They vainly claimed the fulfilment of the treaty they had made with him, they were condemned to death. Argall, who had not dreamed that his theft of La Saussaye's commission would end so seriously, would carry his dissimulation no farther; sent the commission to the Governor, Sir Thomas Dale, and confessed everything.

This document and information drawn out in the course of the affair, determined the Government of Virginia to drive the French from all the points they occupied south of the line 45. A squadron of 3 ships was put under the command of the same Argall, to carry out this design, and the prisoners of St. Saviour were embarked there with Father Biard. Later, Father Biard was accused, without doubt, too hastily, of having served as pilot of the enemies to Port Royal, from hatred to Biencourt, who was Governor, and with whom he had had difficulties while in Acadia.

The fleet commenced by destroying all that was left of the old settlement of St. Croix : useless vengeance, since that had been deserted for several years; then sailed with a fair wind toward Port Royal where he found nobody; everybody being in the fields two leagues away: and in less than two hours all the houses were reduced to ashes as well as the fort. In vain Father Biard wished to persuade the inhabitants, drawn to the shore by the flames which devoured their shelter, to go away with the English, telling them that their ruined chief could no longer support them; they rejected his advice with anger, and one of them even raised an axe to kill him, accusing him of causing all their misfortunes. It was the third time, in its short existence, that Port Royal had been destroyed by different accidents, but this time the destruction was complete. One part of the inhabitants scattered in the woods, or mingled with the natives; another reached the settlement that Champlain had founded on the St. Lawrence. Potrincoirt himself, who had remained in Acadia, overwhelmed by this last disaster, had to abandon America forever.

Potrincoirt may be regarded as the real founder of Port Royal, and of Acadia itself; for the destruction of Port Royal did not cause the whole province to be abandoned; it was always occupied in one place or another by a part of its former colonists, to whom numerous adventurers came and united themselves."

---

## APPENDIX C.

---

### LETTER OF JOHN SMITH TO LORD BACON, 1618.

(S. P. O., AM. & W. I., N. ENG.)

To the Right Hon<sup>ble</sup> S<sup>t</sup>. Francis Bacon, Knt<sup>h</sup>. Baron of Verolam, & Lord High Chancellor of England.

RIGHT HONORABLE :

Having noe better meanes to acquaint yo<sup>r</sup> Lp. w<sup>th</sup> my meaning than this paper the zeale love and dutie to God my Country and yo<sup>r</sup> honor I humbly crave may be my apologie. This 19 yeares I have encountered noe fewe dangers to learne what here I write in these fewe leaves, and though the lines they containe are more rudely phrased then is meete for the viewe of so great a judgment, their



frutes I am certayne may bring both wealth & honor for a Crowne & a kingdom to his Ma<sup>ties</sup> posterity. The profits already returned w<sup>th</sup> so small charge & facilitie according to proportion emboldens me to say it.

With a stock of £5000 I durst venture to effect it, though more than £100,000 hath been spent in Virginia & the Bermudas to small purpose, about the procuring whereof many good men knowes I have spent noe small tyme labor nor mony: but all in vaine. No<sup>th</sup> standing within these fower yeares I have occasioned twice £5000 to be employed that way: But great desyres to ingross it hath bred so many particular humors, as they have their willes, I the losse and the generall good the wrong.

Should I present it to the Biskayners, French or Hollanders, they have made me large offers. But nature doth binde me thus to begg at home, whome strangers have pleased to make a Comander abroad. The busines being of such consequence I hold it but my duty to acquaint it to yo<sup>r</sup> honor, knowing you are not only a chiefe Patron of yo<sup>r</sup> Countrie & state, but also the greatest favorer of all good designes and their authors.

Noe more, but humbly beseeching yo<sup>r</sup> goodness to pardon my rudeness & ponder my plaine meaning in the ballance of goodwill I leave the substance to the discretion of your most admired Judgment, ever resting Yo<sup>r</sup> honors  
ever most truly devoted,

JO SMITH.

NEWE ENGLAND is a part of America betwixt the degrees of 41 & 45 the very meane betweene the North Pole and the line, from 43 to 45. The Coast is mountainous, rockye, barren & broken Isles that make many good harbours, the water being deepe, close to the shore. There is many Rivers & fresh springs, a fewe Savages, but an incredible abundance of fish, fowles, wilde fruits & good store of Timber.

From 43 to 41 an excellent mixed coast of stone sand & clay, much corne, many people, some Isles, many good harbors, a temperate aire yron & Steele, oare & many other such good blessings, that having but men skillful to make them simples there growing, I dare ingage myself to finde all things belonging to the building & rigging of shippes of any proportion & good Merchandize for their fraught within a square of 10 or 14 leagues. 25 harbors I sounded: 30 severall Lordships I sawe, and as nere as I could imagine 3000 men, I was up one River fortie myles, crossed the moutbes of many whose heads the Inhabitants report, are great Lakes, where they kill their beavers inhabited w<sup>th</sup> many people that trade with them of Newe England and those of Canada.

#### THE BENEFIT OF FISHING.

The Hollanders raise yearly by fishing (if recordes be true) more than	£2,000,000
From Newfoundland at the least	£400,000
From Island & North Seae	£150,000
From Hamborough	£20,000
From Cape Blauke	£10,000

These five places doe serve all Europe as well the Land Townes as Ports & all the Christian shipping with these sorts of staple fish which is transported from whence it is taken many a thousand myle—Herring, Poor John, Saltish, Sturgeon, Mullett, Pargos, Caviare, Buttargo.

Now seeing all these sortes of fish may be had in a land more fertile, temperate & plentifull of natural things for the building of Shippes, boates, howses & the nourishment for man only for a little labour or the most part of the chiefe materially, the seasons are so proper and the fishing so neare the habitations we may there make.

That New England hath much advantage of the most of those parts to serve all Europe farr cheaper, than they can who have neither wood, salt nor food but at a great rate, nothing to helpe them but what they carry in their shippes 2 or 300 leagues from their habitacons noe Port or Harbour but the mayne sea: Wee the fishing at our dores & the help of the land for woods, water, frinites, fowle, Corne or what we want to refresh us when we list. And the Terceiras Maderas, Canaries, Spaine, Portugall, Province, Savoy, Cecilia, and all Italye as convenient Markets, for our drye fish, green fish, sturgeon, mullett and Buttargo as Norway, Swethland, Luttvania, Polonia, Denmarke or Germany for their Herring which is here also in abundance for taking; they retourning but Wood, Pitch, Tarre, Soape Ashes, Cordage & such grosse comodities, we wyne, oyles, sugars, silkes & such merchandize as the Straits afford, whereby our profit may equalize theirs. Besides the infinite good by increase of shipping & Marriners this fishing would breede And employment for the surplusage of many of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> unruly subjects. And that this may be, these are my proofes, (viz):

1 PROOF. In the year 1614 with two shippes I went from the Downes the third 1614. In March arrived in New England the last of April. I had but 45 men & boyes, we built seven boates, 37 did fish, myself with 8 others raunging the





Coast. I made this Mappe, gott the acquaintance of the Inhabitants, 1000 Beaver skins 100 martins and as many Otters. 40,000 of drye fish we sent for Spaine with Saltfish, Traine oyle & furs. I returned for England the 18th of July & arrived safe with my Company in health in the latter end of August. Thus in Six months I made my voyage out and home & by the labour of 45 men got nere the value of 1500 £ in lesse than three moneths in those grosse Commodities.

2 PROOFE. } In the year 1615 the Londoners upon this sent 4 good shippes & 1615. } intertayned the men who retourned w<sup>th</sup> me. They set sail in Janu- ry & arrived there in March & found fish enough till half June, fraughted a shipp of 200 Tonnes which they sent for Spaine, one went to Virginia to relieve that Colony & two came home with saltfish, Trayne oyle, furs & the salt—re- mayned within six moneths.

3 PROOFE. } The same year I sett forth from Plymouth w<sup>th</sup> a shippe of 200 & one 1615. } of 50 to inhabit the Countrie according to the Tenor of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Com- mission granted to the West parts of England. But ill weather breaking all my Mastes forced me to retourn againe to Plymouth where reembarking myself in a small barke but of 60 Tonnes I passed the English Pyrats and the French; but at last I was betrayed by four frenchmen of warr who kept me prisoner that sommer & so overthrew my voyage & Plantation During w<sup>ch</sup> tyme my Vice Admirall that sett forth in March arrived there in May, came home fraught with fish, Trayne oyle, Beavers skinnies, and all her men safe in August within 6 moneths and odd dayes.

4 PROOFE. } The Londoners ere I returned sent two shippes more in July to trye 1616. } the Winter: but such courses they took by the Canaries, and the In- dies, it was 10 moneths ere they arrived wasting in that time their seasons, victu- all & heathes yet within 3 months after the one retourned were fraught with fish Trayne oyle & Beavers.

5 PROOFE. } From Plymouth went 4 shippes only to fish and trade some in Feb- 1616. } ruary some in March one of 200 Tonnes got thither in a moneth and went full fraught for Spaine w<sup>th</sup> drye fish, the rest retourned all well & safe and all full fraught with fish, furs and oyle in 5 moneths and odd dayes.

6 PROOFE. } From London went two more one of 220 tonnes got thither in 6 1616. } weekes & within 6 weekes after w<sup>th</sup> 44 men was fraughted with fish, furs and oyle & was again in England within 5 moneths & a few dayes.

7 PROOFE. } Being at Plymouth provided w<sup>th</sup> 3 good shippes I was winde bounde 1617. } nere 3 monethes as was many a 100 sayle more so that the season being past I sent my shippes to Newfoundland whereby the adventures had noe losse.

1618. There is 4 or 5 saile gone thither this year to fish and trade from London also there is one gone only to fish and trade, each shippe for her particular designe and their private ends, but none for any generall good, where neither to Virginia, nor to the Bermudas they make such hast.

By this yor Los may perceive the ordinary performance of this voyage in 6 monethes, the plenty of fish that is most certainly approved & if I be not misin- formed from Cannada & New England within these 4 yeares hath been gotten by the French and English nere 36,000 Beavers skinnies: That all sorts of Timber for shipping is most plentifully there; All those w<sup>ch</sup> retourned can testifie and if ought of this be untrue is easily proved.

The worst is of these 16 shippes 2 or 3 of them have been taken by Pyrates, w<sup>ch</sup> hath putt such feare in poore fishermen, whose powers are but weake. And the desire of gaine in Merchants so violent; every one so regarding his private, that it is worse than slaverye to follow any publike good, & impossible to bring them into a bodye, rule or order, unless it be by some extraordinary power. But if his Ma<sup>ty</sup> would be please to be perswaded to spare us but a Pinuace to lodge my men in and defend us & the Coast from such invasions the space of eight or ten moneths only till we were seated, I would not doubt but ere long to drawe the most part of Newfoundland Land men to assist us if I could be so provided but in due season: for now ere the Savages grow subtle and the Coast be too much frequented with strangers more may be done w<sup>th</sup> £20 than heretatter with a £100.

THE CHARGE.—The Charge of this is only Salt, Netts, Hooks, Lynes, Knives, Course Cloth, Beades, Glasse, Hatchetts and such trash, only for fishing & trade w<sup>th</sup> the savages, that have desyred me to inhabit where I wille and all these shippes have been fished within a square of two leagues the Coast being of the same Condition the length of two or three hundred leagues, where questionles within one hundred 500 sayle may have their freight better than in Island New- foundlande or elsewhere, and be at their marketts ere the other can have their fish in their shippes. From the west part of England the shippes goe for the third part that is when the voyage is done the goods are divided into three parts (viz.) one third for the Shippe; one for the Company the other for the Victualler, whereby with a stock of £5000 I goe forth w<sup>th</sup> a charge of £15000 for the transporting this Colonye will cost little or nothing but at the first, because the fishing will goe forward whether we plant it or noe, for the fishers report it to be best they knowe in the Sea and the land in a short time may be more profitable.

Now if a shippe can gain 50 or £60 in the 100 only by fishing, spending as much





time in going & coming as in staying there were I there planted seeing the fish in their seasons serveth the most part of the yeare and w<sup>th</sup> a litle labour I could make all the salt I need use I can conceive noe reason to distrust, but double & triple their gaires that are at all the former charge & can fish but two monethes. And if those do give 20, 30 or 40 for an acre of ground or Shipp Carpenters, Forgers of yrou or Steele, that buy all things at a dear rate grow rich when they may have as good of all needful necessaries for taking in my opinion should not growe poore and no comoditie in Europe doth decay more than wood.

Thus Right hon<sup>ble</sup> & most worthy Peere I have thrown my Mite into the Treasure of my Countries good beseeching your Lo<sup>r</sup> well to consider of it & examine whether Columbus could give the Spaniards any such certaintyes for his grounds, when he got 15 saile from Queene Isabell of Spaine when all the great judgments of Europe refused him! And though I can promise noe mynes of gold the Hollanders are an example of my project whose eudeavours by fishing cannot be suppressed by all the Kinge of Spaines golden powers. Truth is more than wealth & industrious subjects are more available to a king than gold. And this is so certaine a course to get both as I thinke was never propounded to any State for so small a charge, seeing I can prove it, both by example, reason, and experience. How I have lived spent my tyme & bene employed, I am not ashamed who will examine. Therefore I humbly beseech Yo<sup>r</sup> Hon<sup>r</sup> seriously to consider of it and lett not the povertie of the author cause the action to be less respected, who desyres no better fortune than he could find there.

In the interim I humbly desyre yo<sup>r</sup> Hon<sup>r</sup> would be pleased to grace me w<sup>th</sup> the title of yo<sup>r</sup> Ld<sup>s</sup> servant. Not that I desyre to shut upp the rest of my dayes in the chamber of ease and idleness, but that thereby I may be better countenanced for the prosecution of this my most desyred voyage, for had I the patronage of so mature a judgment as yo<sup>r</sup> honors it would not only induce those to believe what I know to be true in this matter who will now hardly vouchsafe the pensall of my relations, but also be a meanes to further it to the uttermost of their powers w<sup>th</sup> their purses. And I shal be ever ready to spend both and goods for the honor of my Country & yo<sup>r</sup> Lo<sup>r</sup>s service, with w<sup>ch</sup> resolution I doe in all humility rest

At Yo<sup>r</sup> Hono<sup>r</sup>s service.

To show the difference betwixt Virginia and New England I have annexed mappes of them both and this schedule w<sup>ch</sup> will shew the difference of the old names from the new on the Map of New England:

*The Ould Names.*

Cape Cod,  
Chawum,  
Accomack,  
Sagoquas,  
Massachusetts mount,  
Massachusetts river,  
Totant,  
A country not discov<sup>d</sup>,  
Naemkecke,  
Cape Trabigranda,  
Aggawom,  
Smithes Isles,  
Passataquack,  
Accominticus,  
Sassanowco Mount,  
Sowacatuck,  
Bahana.  
Aucociscoes Mount,  
Aucociseo,  
Aumonghewagen,  
Kinbeck,  
Sagadahock,  
Pemmaquid,  
Monahigan,  
Segocket,  
Muttinnock,  
Mettinicus,  
Mecadaeut,  
Penobscot,  
Nasket,

*The New.*

Cape James, Milford Haven.  
Barwick,  
Plimouth.  
Oxford.  
Chevit Hill.  
Charles River.  
Fawnoth.  
Bristow.  
Bastable.  
Cape Anne.  
Southampton.  
Smiths Isles.  
Hull.  
Boston.  
Snoddon Hill.  
Ipswtch.  
Dartmouth.  
Sandwich.  
Shooters Hill.  
The Base.  
Cambridge.  
Edenborough.  
Leeth.  
St. Johns Towne.  
Barties Isles.  
Norwich.  
Willoughbyes Isles.  
Houghfons Isles.  
Dunbarton.  
Aborden.  
Lowmonds.



## ARTICLES OF THE LEYDEN CHURCH, 1618.

PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON.

COLONIAL, VOL. I. No. 43.

(The following Paper is referred to in note 1, page 64, ante.)

Seven articles w<sup>ch</sup> y<sup>e</sup> Church of Leyden sent to y<sup>e</sup> Conusell of England to bee considered of in respect of their judgments occasioned about their going to Virginia, ann<sup>o</sup> 1618.

1. To y<sup>e</sup> confession of fayth published in y<sup>e</sup> name of y<sup>e</sup> Church of England & to every artikell thereof wee do w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> reformed-churches wheer wee live, and also ellswhere assent wholly.

2. As wee do acknolidge y<sup>e</sup> docktryne of fayth their tawght so do wee y<sup>e</sup> fruits & effectes of y<sup>e</sup> same doctryne to y<sup>e</sup> begetting of saving fayth in thowsands in y<sup>e</sup> land (conformists and reformists) as y<sup>e</sup> ar called w<sup>th</sup> whom also as w<sup>th</sup> our bretheren wee do desyer to keepe spirituall communion in peace and will pracktize in our parts all lawfull things.

3. The Kings Maiesty wee acknolidge for Supreme Governer in his dominions in all causes over all parsons, & y<sup>e</sup> none maye dekyne or apeale from his authority or judgment in any cause whatsoever, but y<sup>e</sup> in all things obedience is dewe ounto him, ether active if y<sup>e</sup> thing commanded bee not agaynst gods word, or passive yf itt bee except pardon can be obtayned.

4. Wee judg itt lawfull for his Maiesty to apoynt bishops civill overseers or officers in authoryty under him, in y<sup>e</sup> severall provinces, dioses, congregations, or parishes to oversee y<sup>e</sup> churches and governe them civilly according to y<sup>e</sup> lawes of y<sup>e</sup> land untto whom y<sup>e</sup> ar in all things to geve an account & by them to be ordered according to godlynes.

5. The authority of y<sup>e</sup> present bishops in y<sup>e</sup> land wee do acknowlidg so far forth as y<sup>e</sup> same is indeed derived from his Maiesty untto them and as y<sup>e</sup> prosced in his name, whom wee will also therein honor in all things and hime in them.

6. Wee beleeve y<sup>t</sup> no sinod, classes, convocation or assembly of ecclesiasticall officers hath any power or authority att all but as y<sup>e</sup> same by y<sup>e</sup> maicstraet geven untto them.

7. Lastly wee desyer to geve untto all superiors dewe honour to preserve y<sup>e</sup> unity of y<sup>e</sup> Speritt w<sup>th</sup> all y<sup>e</sup> feare god, to have peace w<sup>th</sup> all men what in us lyeth and wheerin wee err to bee instructed by any.

Subscribed by John Robinson and Willyam Bruster.

*indorsed.* Copy of Seven Articles sent untto y<sup>e</sup> Couusell of England by y<sup>e</sup> Brownists of Leyden.

## APPENDIX D.

TRADE PAPERS, STATE PAPER OFFICE, V. 55.

*To the Kinges most excellent Majestie.*

The most humble petition of y<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ty</sup> councell for the second colonie, and other the adventurers in the Western partes of the plantation in the North partes of Virginia in America.

May it please y<sup>or</sup> Most excellent Majestie,

Whereas it pleased y<sup>or</sup> Ma<sup>ty</sup> by y<sup>r</sup> most gracious L<sup>es</sup> patentees bearing date the 10th of Aprill in the fowerth yeare of y<sup>or</sup> Ma<sup>ty</sup> most blessed raigue to give



lycence for the establishinge of two colonie in Virginië in America, the one called the First Colonie undertaken by certaine noble men knightes and merchants about London; the other called the Second Colonie likewise undertaken by certaine knightes gentlemen and merchants of the Western partes; by vertue whereof some of the Western parts hath at their greates charge and extreme hazard continued to endeavour to discover a place fitt to entertaine such a desigine, as also to find the meanes to bring to passe soe noble a worke; in the constant pursuit whereof it hath pleased God to ayde them with his blessing so far as in the confidence of the continuance of His Grace, they are resolved to pursue the same with all the power and meanes they are able to make, to His glorie, yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> honour and the publique good of the countrye.

And as it pleased y<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> to be gracious to those of the first colonie in enlarginge of the first patent two seav<sup>all</sup> times with many privileges & immunities according to y<sup>r</sup> princely bounty, wherebye they have bin encouraged in their proceedings. yo<sup>r</sup> Peticoners do in all humilitie desire that yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> will vouchsafe unto them the like, that they may w<sup>th</sup> more boldnes go on as they have begun, to the satisfaction of y<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> most religious expectacon, with the alteration only of some few things and the additions here insueing.

First, that territories where yo<sup>r</sup> peticoners make their plantacon may be caled (as by the Prince His Highness it hath bin named) NEW ENGLAND, that the boundes thereof may be settled from 40 to 45 degress of Northerly latitude and soe from sea to sea through the maine as the coast lyeth, and that yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> counsell residing here in England for that plantacon may consist of a President, Vice President, Treasurer, Secretary, and other their associates, to be chosen out of the noble men and knights adventurers home about London, & others the adventurers both knightes gentlemen and merchants in the Western countryes; so as the said counsell does not excede the number of 40 who as one incorporate bodye may as often as neede requires be assembled when and where the President or Vice President, w<sup>th</sup> the Treasurer and Secretary or any two of them, to be assisted w<sup>th</sup> five or three others of the counsell shall think most convenient for that Service; whereby yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> most humble peticoners doth verily hope, by Gods holy assistance to settle their plantacon to the employeing of many of yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> Subjects and the content of all that are well disposed to the prosperitie of yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> most happy raigne.

And soe yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> most humble peticoners shalbe bound as in duty they are to pray for all increase of glory & perpetuall happiness to yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> blessed posteritie for ever.

March, 1619. Upon readinge of this peticon, their Llps. did order that the Lo. Duke of Lenox, Lo. Steward of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Household, and the Earl of Arundell shall take notice of the peticon, consider of the demands for privileges, and thereupon certifie their opinions to their Llps. that such further order may be taken as shalbe meeto.

(Signed)

C. EDMONDES.

#### WARRANT TO PREPARE A PATENT FOR THE NORTHERN COMPANY OF VIRGINIA.

Present.—Lo. Chancellor	Lo. Digby
Lo. Privy Seale	Mr Comptroler
E. of Arundell	Mr Secy Calvert
E of Southampton	Mr Secy Nauton
Lo Bp of Winton	Mr of the Roles

Mr of the Wardes.

#### A LET<sup>r</sup> to S<sup>r</sup> THOMAS COVENTRIE, KNIGHT, HIS MAJES SOLICITOR GENERAL.

WHEREAS it is thought fitt that a Patent of Incorporation be granted to the Adventurers of the Northern colony in Virginia to containe the like liberties, priviledges, powers, authorities, Lands, and all other things within their lymits viz between the degrees of 40 and 48 as were heretofore granted to the companie of Virginia. Excepting only that whereas the said companie have a freedom of custome and subsidie for xxi yeares, and of impositions for ever, this new companie is to be free of custome and Subsidie for the like term of yeares, and of Impositions for so long tyme as his Ma<sup>ties</sup> shall be pleased to grant unto them. These shall be therefore to will and require you to prepare a Patent readie for his Ma<sup>ties</sup> royall signature, to the purpose aforesaid, leaving a blank for the tyme of freedom of impositions to be supplied and put in by his Ma<sup>ties</sup> and for which this shall be your Warrant. Dated, &c.





## THE NEW ENGLAND CHARTER.

JAMES, by the Grace of God, King of *England, Scotland, France, and Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. to all whom these Presents shall come, *Greeting*, Whereas, upon the humble Petition of divers of our well disposed Subjects, that intended to make several Plantations in the Parts of *America*, between the Degrees of thirty-foure and forty-five; We according to our princely Inclination, favouring much their worthy Disposition, in Hope thereby to advance the in Largement of Christian Religion, to the Glory of God Almighty, as also by that Meanes to stretch out the Bounds of our Dominions, and to replenish those Deserts with People governed by the Lawes and Majestates, for the peaceable Commerce of all, that in time to come shall have occasion to traffique into those Territoryes, granted unto Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Somers*, Knights, *Thomas Hanam*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, Esquires, and of their Associates, for the more speedy Accomplishment thereof, by our Letters-Patent, bearing Date the Tenth Day of Aprill, in the Fourth Year of our Reign of *England, France, and Ireland*, and of *Scotland* the fourtieth, free Liberty to divide themselves into two several Collonyes: the one called the first Collonye, to be undertaken and advanced by certaine Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, in and about our Cyty of London; the other called the Second Collonye, to be undertaken and advanced by certaine Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, and their Associates, in and about our Citties of Bristol, Exon, and our Towne of Plymouth, and other Places, as in and by our said Letters-Patents, amongst other Things more att large it doth and may appeare. And whereas, since that Time, upon the humble Petition of the said Adventurers and Planters of the said first Collonye, We have been graciously pleased to make them one distinct and entire Body by themselves, giving unto them their distinct Lymitts and Bounds, and have upon their like humble Request, granted unto them divers Liberties, Privileges, Enlargements, and Immunities, as in and by our severall Letters-Patents it doth and may appeare. Now forasmuch as We have been in like Manner humbly petitioned unto by our trusty and well beloved Servant, Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*, Knight, Captain of our fort and Island by Plymouth, and by certain the principal Knights and Gentlemen Adventurers of the said Second Collonye, and by divers other Persons of Quality, who now intend to be their Associates, divers of which have been at great and extraordinary Charge, and sustained many Losses in seeking and discovering a Place fitt and convenient to lay the Foundation of a hopeful Plantation, and have divers Yeares past by God's Assistance, and their own Endeavours, taken actual Possession of the Continent hereafter mentioned, in our Name and to our Use, as Sovereign Lord thereof, and have settled already some of our People in Places agreeable to their Desires in those Parts, and in Confidence of prosperous Success therein, by the Continuance of God's Devine Blessing, and our Royall Permission, have resolved in a more plentifull and effectual Manner to prosecute the same, and to that Purpose and Intent have desired of Us, for their better Encouragement and Satisfaction herein, and that they may avoide all Confusion, Questions, or Differences between themselves, and those of the said first Collonye, We would likewise be graciously pleased to make certaine Adventurers, intending to erect and establish fishery, Trade, and Plantacion; within the Territoryes, Precincts and Lymitts of thio said second Colony, and their Successors, one several distinct and entire Body, and to grant unto them, such Estate, Liberties, Priveleges, Enlargements, and Immunities there, as in these our Letters-Patents hereafter particularly expressed and declared. And forasmuch as We have been certainly given to understand by divers of our good Subjects, that have for these many Yeares past frequented those Coasts and Territoryes, between the Degrees of Fourty and Fourty-Eight, that there is noo other the Subjects of any Christian King or State, by any Authority from their Sovereignes, Lords, or Princes, actually in Possession of any of the said Lands, or Precincts, whereby any Right, Claim, Interest, or Title, may, might, or ought by that Meanes accrue, belong, or appertaine unto them, or any of them. And also for that We have been further given certainly to knowe, that within these late Yeares there hath by God's Visitation raigned a wonderful Plague, together with many horrible Slaughters, and Murthers, committed amongst the Sauages and brutish People there, heertofore inhabiting, in a Manner to the utter Destruction, Deuastacion, and Depopulacion of that whole Territorye, so that there is not left for many Leagues together in a manner, any that doe claime or challenge any Kind of Interests therein, nor any other Superior Lord or Soueraigne to make Claime thereunto, whereby We in our Judgment are perswaded and satisfied that the appointed Time is come in which Almighty God in his great Goodness and Bountie towards Us and our People, hath thought fitt and determined, that those large and goodly Territoryes, deserted as it were by their naturall Inhabitants, should be possessed and enjoyed by such of our Subjects and People as heertofore have and hereafter shall by his Mercie and Favour, and by his Powerfull Arme, be directed and conducted thither. In Contemplacion



and serious Consideracion whereof, Wee have thought it fitt according to our Kingly Duty, soe much as in Us lyeth, to second and followe Gods sacred Will, rendering reverend Thanks to his Divine Majestie for his gracious favour in laying open and revealing the same unto us, before any other Christian Prince or State, by which Meanes without Offence, and as We trust to his Glory, Wee may with boldness goe on to the settling of so hopefull a Work, which tendeth to the reducing and Conversion of such Sauages as remaine wandering in Desolacion and Distress, to Civil Societie and Christian Religion, to the Inlargement of our own Dominions, and the Advancement of the Fortunes of such of our good Subjects as shall willingly intresse themselves in the said Employment, to whom We cannot but give singular Commendations for their soe worthy Intention and Enterprize; We therefore, of our especiall Grace, mere Motion, and certaine Knowledge, by the Advice of the Lords and others of our Priuy Councell have for Us, our Heysr and Successors, graunted, ordained, and established, and in and by these Presents, Do for Us, our Heirs and Successors, grant, ordaine and establish, that all that Circuit, Continent, Precincts, and Limitts in America, lying and being in Breadth from Fourty Degrees of Northerly Latitude, from the Equinoctiall Line, to Forty-eight Degrees of the said Northerly Latitude, and in Length by all the Breadth aforesaid throughout the Maine Land, from Sea to Sea, with all the Seas, Rivers, Islands, Creekes, Inlets, Ports, and Havens, within the Degrees, Precincts, and Limitts of the said Latitude and Longitude, shall be the Limitts, and Bounds, and Precincts of the second Collony: And to the End that the said Territoryes may forever hereafter be more particularly and certainly known and distinguished, our Will and Pleasure is, that the same shall from henceforth be nominated, termed, and called by the Name of New England, in America: and by that Name of New-England in America, the said Circuit, Precinct, Limitt, Continent, Islands, and Places in America, aforesaid, We do by these Presents, for Us, our Heysr and Successors, name, call, erect, found and establish, and by that Name to have Continuance for ever. And for the better Plantacion, ruling, and governing of the aforesaid New-England, in America, We will, ordaine, constitute, assigne, limitt and appoint, and for Us, our Heysr and Successors, Wee, by the Advice of the Lords and others of the said priue Councill, do by these Presents ordaine, constitute, limitt, and appoint, that from henceforth, there shall be for ever hereafter, in our Towne of Plymouth, in the County of Devon, one Body politieke and corporate, which shall have perpetuall Succession, which shall consist of the Number of fourtie Persons, and no more, which shall be, and shall be called and knowne by the Name the Councill established at Plymouth, in the County of Devon for the planting, ruling, ordering, and governing of New-England, in America; and for that Purpose Wee have, at and by the Nomination and Request of the said Petitioners, granted, ordained, established, and confirmed; and by these Presents, for Us, our Heysr and Successors, doe grant, ordaine, establish, and confirme, our right trusty and right well beloved Cosins and Councillors Lodowick, Duke of Lenox, Lord Steward of our Household, George Lord Marquess Buckingham, our High Admiral of England, James Marquess Hamilton, William Earle of Pembroke, Lord Chamberlaine of our Household, Thomas Earle of Arundel, and our right trusty and right well beloved Cosin, William Earle of Bathe, and right trusty and right well beloved Cosin and Councillor, Henry Earle of Southampton, and our right trusty and right well beloved Cousins, William Earle of Salisbury, and Robert Earle of Warwick, and our right trusty and well beloved John Viscount Haddington, and our right trusty and well beloved Councillor Edward Lord Zouch, Lord Warden of our Cinque Ports, and our trusty and well beloved Edmond Lord Sheffield, Edward Lord Gorges, and our well beloved Sir Edward Seymour, Knight and Barronett, Sir Robert Manselle, Sir Edward Zouch, our Knight Marshall, Sir Dudley Digges, Sir Thomas Roe, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, Sir Francis Popham, Sir John Brook, Sir Thomas Gates, Sir Richard Hawkins, Sir Richard Edgecombe, Sir Allen Apsey, Sir Warwick Ilae, Sir Richard Catchmay, Sir John Bouchier, Sir Nathaniel Rich, Sir Edward Giles, Sir Giles Mompesson, and Sir Thomas Worth, Knights; and our well beloved Matthew Sutcliffe, Deane of Exeter, Robert Heath, Esq; Recorder of our Cittie of London, Henry Bouchier, John Drake, Rawleigh Gilbert, George Chudley, Thomas Hamon, and John Argall, Esquires, to be in and by these Presents: We do appoint them to be the first moderne and present Councill established at Plymouth, in the County of Devon, for the planting, ruling, ordering, and governing of New-England, in America; and that they, and the Suruiours of them, and such as the Suruiours and Suruiour of them shall, from tyme to tyme elect, and chuse, to make up the aforesaid Number of fourtie Persons, when, and as often as any of them, or any of their Successors shall happen to decease, or to be removed from being of the said Councill, shall be in, and by these Presents, incorporated to have a perpetuall Succession for ever, in Deed, Fact, and Name, and shall be one Bodye corporate and politieke; and that those, and such said Persons, and their Successors, and such as shall be elected and chosen to succeed them as aforesaid, shall be, and by these Presents are, and be incorporated, named, and called by the Name of the Councill



established at Plymouth, in the County of Devon, for the planting, ruling, and governing of New-England, in America; and then the said Duke of Lenox, Marquess Buckingham, Marquess Hamilton, Earle of Pembroke, Earle of Arundell, Earle of Bath, Earle of Southampton, Earle of Salisbury, Earle of Warwick, Viscount Haddington, Lord Zouch, Lord Sheffield, Lord Gorges, Sir Edward Seymour, Sir Robert Mansell, Sir Edward Zouch, Sir Dudley Digges, Sir Thomas Roe, Sir Ferdinand Gorges, Sir Francis Popham, Sir John Brooks, Sir Thomas Gates, Sir Richard Hawkins, Sir Richard Edgecombe, Sir Allen Apsley, Sir Warwick Heale, Sir Richard Catchmay, Sir John Bouchier, Sir Nathaniell Rich, Sir Edward Giles, Sir Giles Mompesson, Sir Thomas Wroth, Knights; Matthew Suttcliffe, Robert Heath, Henry Bouchier, John Drake, Rawleigh Gilbert, George Chudley, Thomas Haymon, and John Argall, Esqrs. and their Successors, one Body corporate and politick. in deed and Name, by the Name of the Council established at Plymouth, in the County of Devon, for the planting, ruling, and governing of New-England, in America. Wee do by these Presents, for Us, our Heyres and Successors, really and fully incorporate, erect, ordaine, name, constitute, and establish, and that by the same Name of the said Council, they and their Successors for ever hereafter be incorporated, named, and called, and shall by the same Name have perpetual Succession. And further, We do hereby for Us, our Heires and Successors, grant unto the said Council established at Plymouth, that they and their Successors, by the same Name, be and shall be, and shall continue Persons able and capable in the Law, from time to time, and shall by that Name, of Council aforesaid, have full Power and Authority, and lawfull Capacity and Iiabillity; as well to purchase, take, hold, receive, enjoy, and to have, and their Successors for ever, any Manors, Lands, Tenements, Rents, Royalties, Privileges, Immunities, Reversions, Annuities, Hereditaments, Goods and Chattles whatsoever, of or from Us, our Heirs and Successors, and of or from any other Person or Persons whatsoever, as well in and within this our Realme, of England, as in and within any other Place or Places whatsoever or wheresoever; and the same Manors, Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, Goods, or Chattles, or any of them, by the same Name to alien and sell, or to do, execute, ordaine and performe all other Matters and Things whatsoever to the said Incorporation and Plantation concerning and belonging. And further, our Will and Pleasure is, that the said Council, for the time being, and their Successors, shall have full Power and lawfull Authority, by the Name aforesaid, to sue, and be sued; implead, and to be impleaded; answer, and to be answered, unto all Manner of Courts and Places that now are, or hereafter shall be, within this our Realme and elsewhere, as well temporal as spiritual, in all Manner of Suits and Matters whatsoever, and of what Nature or Kinde soever such Suite or Action be or shall be. And our Will and Pleasure is, that the said forty Persons, or the greater Number of them, shall and may, from time to time, and at any time hereafter, at their owne Will and Pleasure, according to the Laws, Ordinances, and Orders of or by them, or by the greater Part of them, hereafter in Manner and forme in these Presents mentioned, to be agreed upon, to elect and choose amongst themselves one of the said forty Persons for the Time being, to be President of the said Council, which President soe elected and chosen, Wee will, shall continue and be President of the said Council, for so long a Time as by the Orders of the said Council, from time to time to be made, as hereafter is mentioned, shall be thought fitt, and no longer; unto which President, or in his Absence, to any such Person as by the Order of the said Council shall be thereunto appointed, Wee do give Authority to give Order for the warning of the said Council, and summoning the Company to their Meetings. And our Will and Pleasure is, that from time to time, when and so often as any of the Council shall happen to decease, or to be removed from being of the said Council, that then, and so often, the Survivors of them the said Council, and no other, or the greater Number of them, who then shall be from time to time left remaininge, and who shall, or the greater Number of which that shall be assembled at a public Court or Meeting to be held for the said Company, shall elect and choose one or more other Person or Persons to be of the said Council, and which from time to time shall be of the said Council, so that the Number of forty Persons of the said Council may from time to time be supplied: Provided always that as well the Persons herein named to be of the said Council, as every other Councillor hereafter to be elected, shall be presented to the Lord Chancellor of England, or to the Lord High Treasurer of England, or to the Lord Chamberlaine of the Household of Us, our Heirs and Successors for the Time being, to take his and their Oath and Oathes of a Councillor and Councillors to Us, our Heirs and Successors, for the said Company and Colonye in New-England. And further, Wee will grant by these Presents, for Us, our Heires and Successors, unto the said Council and their Successors, that they and their Successors shall have and enjoy for ever a Common Seale, to be engraven according to their Discretions; and that it shall be lawfull for them to appoint whatever Seale or Seales, they shall think most meete and necessary, either for their Uses, as they are one United Body incorporate here, or for the publick of their Gouvernour and Ministers of New-England aforesaid, whereby the Incorpor-





ration may or shall seal any Manner of Instrument touching the same Corporation, and the Manors, Lands, Tenements, Rents, Reversions Annuities, Hereditaments, Goods, Chattles, Affaires, and any other Things belonging unto, or in any wise appertaininge, touching, or concerning the said Councill and their Successors, or concerning the said Corporation and Plantation in and by these our Letters-Patents aforesaid founded, erected, and established. And Wee do further by these Presents, for Us, our Heires and Successors, grant unto the said Councill and their Successors, that it shall and may be lawfull to and for the said Councill, and their Successors for the Time being, in their discretions, from time to time to admitt such and so many Person or Persons to be made free and enabled to trade traffick unto, within, and in New-England aforesaid, and unto every Part and Parcel thereof, or to have, possess, or enjoy, any Lands or Hereditaments in New-England aforesaid, as they shall think fitt, according to the Lawes, Orders, Constitutions, and Ordinances, by the said Councill and their Successors from time to time to be made and established by Virtue of, and according to the true Intent of these Presents, and under such Conditions, Reservations, and agreements as the said Councill shall set downe, order and direct, and not otherwise. And further, of our especiall Grace, certaine Knowledge, and mere Motion, for Us, our Heires and Successors, Wee do by these Presents give and grant full Power and Authority to the said Councill and their Successors, that the said Councill for the Time being, or the greater Part of them, shall and may, from time to time, nominate, make, constitute, ordaine, and confirme by such Name or Names, Sale or Sales, as to them shall seeme Good; and likewise to revoke, discharge, change, and alter, as well all and singular, Governors, Officers, and Ministers, which hereafter shall be by them thought fitt and needful to be made or used, as well to attend the Business of the said Company here, as for the Government of the said Collony and Plantation, and also to make, ordaine, and establish all Manner of Orders, Laws, Directions, Instructions, Forms, and Ceremonies of Government and Magistracy fitt and necessary for and concerning the Government of the said Collony and Plantation, so always as the same be not contrary to the Laws and Statutes of this our Realme of England, and the same att all Times hereafter to abrogate, revoke, or change, not only within the Precincts of the said Collony, but also upon the Seas in going and coming to and from the said Collony, as they in their good Discretions shall thinke to be fittest for the good of the Adventurers and Inhabitants there. And Wee do further of our especiall Grace, certaine Knowledge, and mere Motion, grant, declare, and ordain, that such principall Governor, as from time to time shall be authorized and appointed in Manner and Forme in these Presents heretofore expressed, shall have full Power and Authority to use and exercise martiall Laws in Case of Rebellion, Insurrection, and Mutiny, in as large and ample Manner as our Lieutenants in our Counties within our Realme of England have or ought to have by Force of their Commission of Lieutenantcy. And for as much as it shall be necessary for all our loving Subjects as shall inhabit within the said Precincts of New-England aforesaid, to determine to live together in the Feare and true Worship of Almighty God, Christian Peace, and Civil Quietness, each with other, whereby every one may with more Safety, Pleasure, and Profit, enjoye that whereunto they shall attaine with great Pain and Perill, Wee, for Us, our Heires and Successors, are likewise pleased and contented, and by these Presents do give and grant unto the said Council and their Successors, and to such Governors, Officers, and Ministers, as shall be by the said Councill constituted and appointed according to the Natures and Limitts of their Offices and Places respectively, that they shall and may, from time to time for ever heerafter, within the said Precincts of New-England, or in the Way by the Seas thither, and from thence have full and absolute Power and Authority to correct, punish, pardon, governe, and rule all such the Subjects of Us, our Heires and Successors, as shall from time to time adventure themselves in any Voyage thither, or that shall att any Time heerafter inhabit in the Precincts or Territories of the said Collony as aforesaid, according to such Laws, Orders, Ordinances, Directions, and Instructions as by the said Councill aforesaid shall be established; and in Defect thereof, in Cases of Necessity, according to the good Discretions of the said Governors and Officers respectively, as well in Cases capitall and criminall, as civil, both marine and others, so always as the said Statutes, Ordinances, and Proceedings, as near as conveniently may be, agreeable to the Laws, Statutes, Government and Policie of this our Realme of England. And furthermore, if any Person or Persons, Adventurers or Planters of the said Collony, or any other, att any Time or Times heerafter, shall transport any Moneys, Goods, or Merchandizes, out of any of our Kingdoms, with a Pretence or Purpose to land, sell, or otherwise dispose of the same within the Limitts and Bounds of the said Collony, and yet nevertheless being att Sea, or after he hath landed within any Part of the said Collony shall carry the same into any other strainge Country with a Purpose there to sell and dispose thereof, that then all the Goods and Chattles of the said Person or Persons so offending and transported, together with the Ship or Vessell wherein such Transportation was made, shall be forfeited to Us, our Heires and Successors. And





Wee do further of our especiall Grace, certaine Knowledge, and meere Motion for Us, our Heires and Successors for and in Respect of the Considerations aforesaid, and for divers other good Considerations and Causes, us thereunto especially moving, and by the Advice of the Lords and Others of our said Privy Council have absolutely given, granted, and confirmed, and do by these Presents absolutely give, grant, and confirm unto the said Council, called the Council established att Plymouth in the County of Devon for the planting, ruling, and governing of New-England in America, and unto their Successors for ever, all the aforesaid Lands and Grounds, Continent, Precinct, Place, Places and Territories, viz. that aforesaid Part of America, lying, and being in Breadth from forty Degrees of Northerly Latitude from the Equinoctiall Line, to forty-eight Degrees of the said Northerly Latitude inclusively; and in Length of, and within all the Breadth, aforesaid, throughout all Maine Lands from Sea to Sea, together also, with the Firme Lands, Soyles, Grounds, Havens, Ports, Rivers, Waters, Fishings, Mines, and Mineralls, as well Royall Mines of Gold and Silver, as other Mine and Mineralls, precious Stones, Quarries, and all, and singular other Commodities, Jurisdictions, Royalties, Privileges, Franchises, and Preheminenes, both within the same Tract of Land upon the Maine and also within the said Islands and Seas adjoining: Provided always, that the said Islands, or any of the Premises herein before mentioned, and by these Presents intended and meant to be granted, be not actually possessed or inhabited by any other Christian Prince or Estate, nor be within the Bounds, Limitts, or Territoryes, of that Southern Collony heretofore by us granted to be planted by diverse of our loving Subjects in the South Part, to have and to hold, possess and enjoy, all, and singular, the aforesaid Continent, Lands, Territoryes, Islands, Hereditaments and Precincts, Sea Waters; Fishings, with all, and all Manner their Commodities, Royalties, Liberties, Preheminenes, and Profitts, that shall arise from thence, with all and singular, their Appertenance, and every Part and Parcell thereof, and of them, to and unto the said Council and their Successors and Assignes for ever, the sole only and proper Use, Benefit, and Behoofe of them the said Council and their Successors and Assignes for ever, to be holden of Us, our Heires, and Successors, as of our Manor of East Greenwich, in our County of Kent, in free and comon Socage and not in Capita, nor by Knight's Service; yielding and paying therefore to Us, our Heires, our Successors, the fifth Part, of the Ore of Gold and Silver, which from time to time, and att all times hereafter, shall happen to be found, gotten, had, and obtained, in or within any the said Lands, Limitts, Territoryes, and Precincts, or in or within any Part or Parcell thereof, for, or in Respect of all, and all Manner of Dutys, Demands, and Services whatsoever, to be done, made, or paid to Us, our Heires, and Successors. And Wee do further of our especiall Grace, certaine Knowledge, and meere Motion, for Us, and our Heires, and Successors, give and grant to the said Council, and their Successors for ever by these Presents, that it shall be lawfull and free for them and their Assignes, att all and every time and times hereafter, out of our Realmes or Dominions whatsoever, to take, load, carry, and transport in, and into their Voyages, and for, and towards the said Plantation in New-England, all such, and so many of our loving Subjects, or any other Strangers that will become our loving subjects, and live under our Allegiance, as shall willingly accompany them in the said Voyages and Plantation, with Shipping, Armour, Weapons, Ordinance, Munition, Powder, Shott, Vietnals, and all Manner of Cloathing, Implements, Furniture, Beasts, Cattle, Horses, Mares, and all other Things necessary for the said Plantation, and for their Use and Defence, and for Trade with the People there, and in passing and returning to and fro, without paying or yielding, any Custom or Subsidie inward or outward, to either Us, our Heires, or Successors, for the same, for the Space of seven Years, from the Day of the Date of these Presents, provided, that none of the said Persons be such as shall be hereafter by special Name restrained by Us, our Heires, or Successors. And for their further Encouragement, of our especiall Grace and Favor, Wee do by these Presents for Us, our Heires, and Successors, yield and grant, to and with the said Council and their Successors and every of them, their Factors and Assignes, that they and every of them, shall be free and quitt from all Subsidies and Customs in New-England for the Space of seven Years, and from all Taxes and Impositions for the Space of twenty and one Yeares, upon all Goods and Merchandizes att any time or times hereafter, either upon Importation thither, or Exportation from thence into our Realme of England, or into any our Dominions by the said Council and their Successors, their Deputies, Factors, and Assignes, or any of them, except only the five Pounds *per Cent.* due for Custome upon all such Goods and Merchandizes, as shall be brot and imported into our Realme of England, or any other of our Dominions, according to the ancient Trade of Merchants; which five Pounds *per Cent.* only being paid, it shall be thenceforth lawfull and free for the said Adventurers, the same Goods and Merchandize to export and carry out of our said Dominions into Foreigne Parts, without any Custom, Tax, or other Duty to be paid to Us, our Heires, or Successors, or to any other Officers or Ministers of Us, our Heires, or Successors; pro-



vided, that the said Goods and Merchandizes be shipped out within thirteene Months after their first Landing within any Part of these Dominions. And further our Will and Pleasure is, and Wee do by these Presents charge, command, warrant, and authorize the said Councill, and their Successors, or the major Part of them, which shall be present and assembled for that Purpose, shall from time to time under their comon Seale, distribute, convey, assigne, and sett over, such particular Portions of Lands, Tenements, and Hereditaments, as are by these Presents, formerly granted unto each our loving Subjects, naturally borne or Denizens, or others, as well Adventurers as Planters, as by the said Company upon a Commission of Survey and Distribution, executed and returned for that Purpose, shall be named, appointed, and allowed, wherein our Will and Pleasure is, that Respect be had as well to the Proportion of the Adventurers, as to the speciall Service, Hazard, Exploit, or Meritt of any Person so to be recompensed, advanced, or rewarded, and wee do also, for Us, our Heires, and Successors, grant to the said Councill and their Successors and to all and every such Governours, or Officers, or Ministers, as by the said Councill shall be appointed to have Power and Authority of Government and Command in and over the said Collony and Plantation, that they and every of them, shall, and lawfully may, from time to time, and att all Times hereafter for ever, for their severall Defence and Safety, encounter, expulse, repel, and resist by Force of Arms, as well by Sea as by Land, and all Ways and Meanes whatsoever, all such Person and Persons, as without the speciall Licence of the said Councill and their Successors, or the greater Part of them shall attempt to inhabitt within the said severall Precincts and Limitts of the said Collony and Plantation. And alsoall, and every such person or Persons whatsoever, as shall enterprize or attempt att any time hereafter Destruction, Invasion, Detriment, or Annoyance to the said Collony and Plantation; and that it shall be lawfull for the said Councill, and their Successors, and every of them, from Time to Time, and att all Times hereafter, and they shall have full Power and Authority, to take and surprize by all Ways and Meanes whatsoever, all and every such Person and Persons whatsoever, with their Ships, Goods, and other Furniture, Trafficking in any Harbour, Creeke, or Place, within the Limitts and Precinctes of the said Collony and Plantation, and not being allowed by the said Councill to be Adventurers or Planters of the said Collony. And of our further Royall Favor, Wee have granted, and for Us, our Heires, Successors, Wee do grant unto the said Councill and their Successors, that the said Territoryes, Lands, Rivers, and Places aforesaid, or any of them, shall not be visited, frequented, or traded unto, by any other of our Subjects, or the Subjects of Us, our Heires, or Successors, either from any the Ports and Havens belonging or appertayning, or which shall belong or appertayne unto Us, our Heires, or Successors, or to any foraigne State, Prince, or Potentate whatsoever: And therefore, Wee do hereby for Us, our Heires, and Successors, charge, command, prohibit and forbid all the Subjects of Us, our Heirs, and successors, of what Degree and Quality soever, they be, that none of them, directly, or indirectly, presume to visitt, frequent, trade, or adventure to traffick into, or from the said Territoryes, Lands, Rivers, and Places aforesaid, or any of them other than the said Councill and their Successors, Factors, Deputys, and Assignees, unless it be with the License and Consent of the said Councill and Company first had and obtained in Writing, and the comon Seal, upon Pain of our Indignation and Imprisonment of their Bodys during the Pleasure of Us, our Heires or Successors, and the Forfeiture and Loss both of their Ships and Goods, wheresoever they shall be found either within any of our Kingdomes or Dominions, or any other Place or Places out of our Dominions. And for the better effecting of our said Pleasure herein, Wee do heereby for Us, our Heires and Successors, give and grant full Power and Authority unto the said Councill, and their Successors for the time being, that they by themselves, their Factors, Deputyes, or Assignees, shall and may from time to time, and att all times hereafter, attach, arrest, take, and seize all and all Manner of Ship and Ships, Goods, Wares, and Merchandizes whatsoever, which shall be bro't from or carried to the Places before mentioned, or any of them, contrary to our Will and Pleasure, before in these Presents expressed. The Moyety or one halfe of all which Forfeitures Wee do hereby for Us, our Heires and Successors, give and grant, unto the said Councill, and their Successors to their own proper Use without Accompt, and the other Moyety, or halfe Parte thereof, Wee will shall be and remaine to the Use of Us, our Heires and Successors. And we likewise have condiscended and granted, and by these Presents, for Us, our Heires and Successors, do condiscend, and grant to and with the said Councill and their Successors, that Wee, our Heires or Successors, shall not or will not give and grant any Libertye, Licence, or Authority to any Person or Persons whatsoever, to saile, trade, or trafficke unto the aforesaid parts of New-England, without the good Will and Likinge of the said Councill, or the greater Part of them for the Time beinge, att any their Courts to be assembled. And Wee do for Us, our Heires and Successors, give and grant unto the said Councill, and their Successors, that whensoever, or so often as any Custome or Subsidie shall growe due or payable unto Us, our Heires or Successors, according to the



Limitation and Appointment aforesaid, by Reason of any Goods, Wares, Merchandizes, to be shipped out, or any Returne to be made of any Goods, Wares, or Merchandizes, unto or from New-England, or any the Lands Territoryes aforesaid, that then so often, and in such Case the Farmers, Customers, and Officers of our Customes of England and Ireland, and every of them, for the Time being, upon Request made unto them by the said Councill, their Successors, factors, or Assignees, and upon convenient Security to be given in that Behalfe, shall give and allowe unto the said Councill and their Successors, and to all Person and Persons free of the said Company as aforesaid, six Months Time for the Payment of the one halfe of all such Custome and Subsidie, as shall be due, and payable unto Us, our Heires and Successors for the same, for which these our Letters Patent, or the Duplicate, or the Enrolment thereof, shall be unto our said Officers a sufficient Warrant and Discharge. Nevertheless, our Will and Pleasure is, that if any of the said Goods, Wares, and Merchandizes, which be, or shall be, att any Time heereafter, landed and exported out of any of our Realmes aforesaid, and shall be shipped with a Purpose not to be carried to New England aforesaid, that then such Payment, Duty, Custome, Imposition, or Forfeiture, shall be paid, and belong to Us, our Heires, and Successors, for the said Goods, Wares, and Merchandizes, so fraudulently sought to be transported, as if this our Grant had not been made nor granted: And Wee do for Us, our Heires and Successors, give and grant unto the said Councill and their Successors for ever, by these Presents, that the said President of the said Company, or his Deputy for the Time being, or any two others of the said Councill, for the said Collony in New-England, for the Time being, shall and may, and att all Times heereafter, and from time to time, have full Power and Authority, to minister and give the Oath and Oathes of Allegiance and Supremacy, or either of them, to all and every Person and Persons, which shall at any Time and Times heereafter, goe or pass to the said Collony in New-England. And further, that it shall be likewise lawfull for the said President, or his Deputy for the Time being, or any two others of the said Councill for the said Collony of New-England for the Time being, from time to time, and att all Times heerafter, to minister such a formal Oath, as by their Discretion shall be reasonably devised, as well unto any Person and Persons employed or to be employed in, for, or touching the said Plantation, for their honest faithfull, and just Discharge of their Service, in all such Matters as shall be committed unto them for the Good and Benefit of the said Company, Collony, and Plantation, as also unto such other Person or Persons, as the said President or his Deputy, with two others of the said Councill, shall thinke meete for the Examination or clearing of the Truth in any Cause whatsoever, concerning the said Plantation, or any Business from thence proceeding, or thereunto belonging. And to the End that no lewd or ill-disposed Persons, Saylor, Soldiers, Artificers, Laborours, Husbandmen, or others, which shall receive Wages, Apparel, or other Entertainment from the said Councill, or contract and agree with the said Councill to goe, and to serve, and to be employed, in the said Plantation, in the Collony in New-England, to afterwards withdraw, hide, and conceale themselves, or refuse to go thither, after they have been so entertained and agreed withall; and that no Persons which shall be sent and employed in the said Plantation, of the said Collony in New-England, upon the Charge of the said Councill, doe misbehave themselves by mutinous Seditions, or other notorious Misdemeanors, or which shall be employed, or sent abroad by the Governour of New-England or his Deputy, with any Shipp or Pinnace, for Provision for the said Collony, or for some Discovery, or other Business or Affaires concerninge the same, doe from thence either treacherously come back againe, or returne into the Realme of Engiande by Stealth, or without Licence of the Governour of the said Collony in New-England for the Time being, or be sent hither as Misdoers or Offendors; and that none of those Persons after their Returne from thence, being questioned by the said Councill heere, for such their Misdemeanors and Offences, doe, by insolent and contemptuous Carriage in the Presence of the said Councill shew little Respect and Reverence, either to the Place or Authority in which we have placed and appointed them and others, for the clearing of their Lewdness and Misdemeanors committed in New-England, divulge vile and scandalous Reports of the Country of New-England, or of the Government or Estate of the said Plantation and Collony, to bring the said Voyages and Plantation into Disgrace and Contempt, by Meanes whereof, not only the Adventurers and Planters already engaged in the said Plantation may be exceedingly abused and hindered, and a great Number of our loving and well-disposed Subjects, otherways well affected and inclined to joine and adventure in so noble a Christian and worthy Action may be discouraged from the same, but also the Enterprize itself may be overthrowne, which cannot miscarry without some Dishonour to Us and our Kingdome: Wee, therefore, for preventing so great and enormous Abuses and Misdemeanors, Do, by these Presents for Us, our Heires, and Successors, give and grant unto the said President or his Deputy, or such other Person or Persons, as by the Orders of the said Councill shall be appointed by Warrant under his or their Hand or Hands, to send for,







or cause to be apprehended, all and every such Person and Persons, who shall be noted, or accused, or found at any time or times heereafter to offend or misbehave themselves in any the Affaires before mentioned and expressed; and upon the Examination of any such Offender or Offenders, and just Proofs made by Oathe taken before said Council, of any such notorious Misdemeanours by them committed as aforesaid, and also upon any insolent, contemptuous, or irreverent Carriage or Misbehaviour, to or against the said Council, to be shewed or used by any such Person or Persons so called, convened, and appearing before them as aforesaid, that in all such Cases, our said Council, or any two or more of them for the time being, shall and may have full Power and Authority, either heere to bind them over with good Sureties for their good Behaviour, and further therein to proceed, to all Intents and Purposes as it is used in other like Cases within our Realme of England, or else at their Discretions to remand and send back the said Offenders, or any of them, to the said Collony of New-England, there to be proceeded against and punished as the Governour's Deputy or Council there for the Time being, shall think meete, or otherwise according to such Laws and Ordinances as are, and shall be, in Use there, for the well ordering and good Government of the said Collony. And our Will and Pleasure is, and Wee do hereby declare to all Christian Kings, Princes and States, that if any Person or Persons which shall hereafter be of the said Collony or Plantation, or any other by Licence or Appointment of the said Council, or their Successors, or otherwise, shall at any time or times heereafter, rob or spoil, by Sea or by Land, or do any Hurt, Violence, or unlawfull Hostility to any of the Subjects of Us, our Heires, or Successors, or any of the Subjects of the King, Prince, Ruler, or Governour, or State, being then in League or Amity with Us, our Heires and Successors, and that upon such Injury, or upon just Complaint of such Prince, Ruler, Governour, or State, or their Subjects, Wee, our Heires, or Successors shall make open Proclamation within any of the Ports of our Realme of England commodious for that Purpose, that the Person or Persons having committed any such Robbery or Spoile, shall within the Term limited by such a Proclamation, make full Restitution or Satisfaction of all such Injuries done, so as the said Princes or other, so complaining, may hold themselves fully satisfied and contented. And if that the said Person or Persons, having committed such Robbery or Spoile, shall not make or cause to be made Satisfaction accordingly within such Terme so to be limited, that then it shall be lawful for Us, our Heires and Successors, to put the said Person or Persons out of our Allegiance and Protection; and that it shall be lawful and free for all Princes to prosecute with Hostility the said Offenders and every of them, their, and every of their Procurers, Aiders, Abettors, and Comforters in that Behalfe. And also, Wee do for Us, our Heires, and Successors, declare by these Presents, that all and every the Persons beinge our Subjects, which shall goe and inhabit within the said Collony and Plantation, and every of their Children and Posterity, which shall happen to be born within the Limitts thereof, shall have and enjoy all Liberties, and franchises, and Immunities of free Denizens and naturall Subjects within any of our other Dominions, to all Intents and Purposes, as if they had been abidinge and born within this our Kingdome of England, or any other our Dominions. And lastly, because the principall Effect which we can desire or expect of this Action, is the Conversion and Reduction of the People in those Parts unto the true Worship of God and Christian Religion, in which Respect, Wee would be loath that any Person be permitted to pass that We suspected to affect the Superstition of the Chh of Rome, Wee do hereby declare that it is our Will and Pleasure that none be permitted to pass, in any Voyage from time to time to be made into the said Country, but such as shall first have taken the Oathe of Supremacy; for which Purpose, Wee do by these Presents give full Power and Authority to the President of the said Council, to tender and exhibit the said Oath to all such Persons as shall at any time be sent and employed in the said Voyage. And Wee also for Us, our Heires and Successors, do covenant and grant to and with the Council, and their Successors, by these Presents, that if the Council for the time being, and their Successors, or any of them, shall at any time or times heereafter, upon any Doubt which they shall conceive concerning the Strength or Validity in Law of this our present Grant, or be desirous to have the same renewed and confirmed by Us, our Heires and Successors, with Amendment of such Imperfections and Defects as shall appeare fitt and necessary to the said Council, or their Successors, to be reformed and amended on the Behalfe of Us, our Heires and Successors, and for the furthering of the Plantation and Government, or the Increase, continuing, and flourishing thereof, that then, upon the humble Petition of the said Council for the time being, and their Successors, to Us, our Heires and Successors, Wee, our Heires and Successors, shall and will forthwith make and pass under the Great Seale of England, to the said Council and their Successors, such further and better Assurance, of all and singular the Lands, Grounds, Royalties, Privileges, and Premises aforesaid granted, or intended to be granted, according to our true Intent and Meaning in these our Letters-patents, signified, declared, or mentioned, as by the learned Conneill of Us, our Heires,



and Successors, and of the said Company and their Successors shall, in that Behalfe, be reasonably devised or advised. And further our Will and Pleasure is, that in all Questions and Doubts, that shall arise upon any Difficulty of Instruction or Interpretation of any Thing contained in these our Letters-patents, the same shall be taken and interpreted in most ample and beneficial Manner, for the said Council and their Successors, and every Member thereof. And Wee do further for Us, our Heires and Successors, charge and command all and singular Admirals, Vice-Admirals, Generals, Commanders, Captains, Justices of Peace, Majors, Sheriffs, Bailiffs, Constables, Customers, Comptrollers, Waiters, Searchers, and all the Officers of Us, our Heires and Successors, whatsoever to be from time to time, and att all times heereafter, in all Things aiding, helping, and assisting unto the said Council, and their Successors, and unto every of them, upon Request and Requests by them to be made, in all Matters and Things, for the Furtherance and Accomplishment of all or any the Matters and Things by Us, in and these our Letters-patents, given, granted, and provided, or by Us, meant or intended to be given, granted, and provided, as they our said Officers, and the Officers of Us, our Heires and Successors, do tender our Pleasure, and will avoid the contrary att their Perills. And Wee also do by these Presents, ratifye and confirm unto the said Council and their Successors, all Privileges, franchises, Liberties, Immunities granted in our said former Letters-patents, and not in these our Letters-patents revoked, altered, changed or abridged, altho' express Mention, &c.

In Witnes &c.

Witness our selfe at *Westminster*, the Third Day of November, in the Eighteenth Yeare of our Reign over England, &c.

*Par Breve de Privato Sigillio, &c.*

This is a true Copy from the Original Record remaining in the Chapel of the Rolls having been examined.

HEN. ROOKE, *Clerk of the Rolls.*

## THE FIRST PLYMOUTH PATENT.

THIS INDENTURE MADE THE FIRST DAY OF JUNE 1621 AND IN THE yeeres of the raigne of our Sovraigne Lord JAMES by the grace of god King of England Scotland France and Ireland defender of the faith &c That is to say of England France and Ireland the Nyneteenth and of Scotland the fowre and fiftith. Betwene the President and Councell of New England of the one pte And John Peirce Citizen and Clothworker of London and his Associate of the other pte WITNESSETH that whereas the said John Peirce and his Associates haue already transported and undertaken to transporte at their coste and chardges themselves and dyvers psons into New England and there to erect and build a Towne and settle dyvers Inhabitants for the advancement of the genall plantacon of that Country of New England NOW THE SAYDE President and Councell in consideracon thereof and for the furtherance of the said plantacon and incoragement of the said Undertakers haue agreed to graunt assigne allot and appoynt to the said John Peirce and his associates and euy of them his and their heires and assignes one hundred acres of grownd for euy pson so to be transported besides dyverse other pryvileges Liberties and comodities hereafter mencioned, And to that intent they haue graunted allotted assigned and confirmed, And by their pnts do graunt allot assigne and confirme vnto the said John Peirce and his Associates his and their heires & Assignes and the heires & assignes of euy of them seavally & respectyvelly one hundred senall acres of grownd in New England for euy pson so transported or to be transported (Yf the said John Peirce or his Associate conytinue there three whole yeeres either at one or senall tymes or dye in the meane season after he or they are shipped with intent there to inhabit. The same Land to be taken and chosen by them their deputies or assignes in any place or places where-soeu not already inhabited by any English and where no English pson or psons are already placed or settled or have by order of the said President and Councell made choyce of, nor within Tenne myles of the same (vntles it be on the opposite syde of some great or Navigable Ryver to the former pteuler plantacon, together with the one half of the Ryver or Ryvers, that is to say to the middlest thereof as shall adioyne to such lands as they shall make choyce of together with all such Liberties pryviledges pffits & comodities as the said Land and Ryvers which they shall make choyce of shall yield together with free libtie to fische in and vpon the Coast of New England and in all havens ports and creekes Therevnto belonging and that no pson or psons whatsoen shall take any benefit or libtie of or to any of the grownds or the one half of the Ryvers aforesaid (excepting the free vse of highways by land and Navigable Ryvers, but that the said undertakers & planters



their heires & assignes shall haue the sole right and vse of the said grownds and the one half of the said Ryvers with all their pfitts & appertennces. AND forasmuch as the said John Peirce and his associates intend and haue vnderaken to build Churches, Schooles, Hospitalles, Towne houses, Bridges and such like workes of Charytie As also for the maynteyning of Majestrates and other inferior Officers. In regard whereof and to the end that the said John Peirce and his Associates his and their heires and assignes may haue wherewithall to beare & support such like charge. THEREFORE the said President & Conncell aforesaid do graunt vnto the said Vnderakers their heires & assignes Fiftene hundred acres of Land more-over and aboue the aforesaid proporcion of one hundred the pson for euy vnder-taker & Planter to be employed vpon such publick vses as the said Vnderakers & Planters shall think fitt. AND they do further graunt vnto the said John Peirce and his Associates their heires and assignes, that for euy pson that they or any of them shall transport at their owne prop coste & charge into New England either vnto the Lands hereby graunted or adioyninge to them within Seven Yeeres after the feast of St. John Baptist next coming. Yf the said pson transported contynue there three whole yeeres either at one or seuell tymes or dye in the meane season after he is shipped with intent there to inhabit that the said pson or psons that shall so at his or their owne charge transport any other shall haue graunted and allowed to him & them and his & their heires respectyvelly for euy pson so transported or dyeing after he is shipped one hundred acres of Land, and also that euy pson or psons who by contract & agreem<sup>t</sup> to be had & made with the said Vnderakers shall at his & their owne charge transport him & themselves or any other and settle and plant themselves in New England within the said Seaven Yeeres for three yeeres space as aforesaid or dye in the meane tyme shall haue graunted & allowed vnto euy pson so transporting or transported and their heires & assignes respectyvelly the like number of one hundred acres of Land as aforesaid the same to be by him & them or their heires & assignes chosen in any entyre place together and adioyn-ing to the aforesaid Lands and not straglingly not before the tyme of such choyce made possessed or inhabited by any English Company or within tenne myles of the same (except it be on the opposite side of some great Navigable Ryver as aforesaid YELDING and paying vnto the said President and Counsell for euy hundred acres so obteyned and possessed by the said John Peirce and his said Associates and by those said other psons and their heires & assignes who by Contract as aforesaid shall at their owne charge transport themselves or others the Yerely rent of Two shillings at the feast of St. Michael Tharchaungell to the hand of the Rentgatherer of the said President & Counsell and their successors foren, the first paym<sup>t</sup> to begyn after the xpiracon of the first seven Yeeres next after the date hereof AND further it shalbe lawfull to and for the said John Peirce and his Associates and such as contract with them as aforesaid their Tenn<sup>t</sup>s & srvaunts vpon dislike of or in the Country to returne for England or elsewhere with all their goods and chattells at their will and pleasure without lett or disturbance of any paying all debts that justly shalbe demanded AND likewise it shalbe lawfull and is graunted to and for the said John Peirce and his Associates & Planters their heires & assignes their Tenn<sup>t</sup>s & srvaunts and such as they or any of them shall contract with as aforesaid and send and employ for the said plantacon to goe & returne trade traffiq in port or transport their goods & mechanndize at their will & pleasure into England or elsewhere paying onely such duties to the Kings ma<sup>ty</sup> his heires & successors as the President and Counsell of New England doe pay without any other taxes Imposicions burthens or restraints whatsoever vpon them to be ymposed (the rent hereby resved being onely excepted) AND it shalbe lawfull for the said Vnder-takes & Planters, their heires & successors freely to truck trade & traffiq with the Salvages in New England or neighboring thereabouts at their wills and pleasures without lett or disturbance. As also to haue libtie to hunt hantke fish or fowle in any place or places not now or hereafter by the English inhabited. AND THE SAID President & Counsell do covenant & promise to and with the said John Peirce and his Associates and others contracted w<sup>th</sup> as aforesaid his and their heires & assignes, That vpon lawfull srvey to be had & made at the charge of the said Vnderakers & Planters and lawfull informacon geven of the bowndes, metes, and quantite of Lands so as aforesaid to be by them chosen & possessed, they the said President & Counsell vpon srrender of this pte graunt & Indenture and vpon reasonable request to be made by the said Vnderakers & Planters their heires & assignes within seaven Yeeres now next coming, shall and will by their Deede Indented and vnder their Comon seale grant in fee & confirme all and euy the said lands so sett out and bownded as aforesaid to the said John Peirce and his Associates and such as contract with them their heires and assignes in as large and beneficiall manner as the same are in this pte graunted or intended to be graunted to all intents and purposes with all and euy pculier pryviledge & freedom resvacon and condicon with all dependences herein specified & graunted: And shall also at any tyme within the said terme of Seaven Yeeres vpon request vnto the said President & Counsell made, graunt vnto them the said John Peirce and his Associates Vnderakers & Planters their heires & assignes, Let-ters & graunts of Incorporacon by some vsuall & fitt name & tytle with Liberty





to them and their successors from tyme to tyme to make orders Lawes Ordynances & Constitucions for the rule government ordering and directing of all psons to be transported & settled vpon the lands hereby graunted, intended to be graunted or hereafter to be graunted and of the said Lands & profitts thereby arrysing; And in the meane tyme vntill such graunt made, Yt shalbe lawfull for the said John Peirce his Associate Vndertakes & Planters their heires & assignes by consent of the greater pt of them, To establish such Lawes & ordynances as are for their better governemt, and the same by such Officer or Officers as they shall by most voyces elect & choose to put in execution. AND lastly the said President and Counsell do graunt and agree to and with the said John Peirce and his Associates and others contracted with and ymployed as aforesaid their heires & assignes, That when they have planted the Lands hereby to them assigned & appointed, That then it shalbe lawfull for them with the pryvitie & allowaunce of the President & Counsell as aforesaid to make choyce of to enter into and to haue an addition of fiftie acres more for euy pson transported into New England with like resavacons condicions & priviledges as are aboue graunted to be had and chosen in such place or places where no English shalbe then settled or inhabiting or haue made choyce of and the same entered into a booke of Acts at the tyme of such choyce so to be made or within tenne Myles of the same (excepting on the opposite side of some great Navigable Ryver as aforesaid; And that it shall and may be lawfull for the said John Peirce and his Associates their heires and assignes from tyme to tyme and at all times hereafter for their seuall defence & savetie to encounter expulse repell & resist by force of Armes aswell by Sea as by Land and by all wayes and meanes whatsoever all such pson & psons as without the especiall lycense of the said President or Counsell and their successor or the greater pt of them shall attempt to inhabit within the seuall psinets & lymytts of their said Plantacon, Or shall enterpryse or attempt at any tyme hereafter destrucon, Inuasion, detryment or auoyauce to the said Plantacon. AND THE SAID John Peirce and his associates and their heires & assignes do covenant & promyse to & with the said President & Counsell and their successors, That they the said John Peirce and his Associates from tyme to tyme during the said Seaven Yeeres shall make a true Certificat to the said President & Counsell & their successors from the chief Officers of the places respectvely of euy pson transported & landed in New England or shipped as aforesaid to be entered by the Secretary of the said President & Counsell into a Register booke for that purpose to be kept AND the said John Peirce and his Associates Jointly and seually for them their heirs & assignes do covenant promyse & graunt to and with the said President & Counsell and their successors That the psons transported to this their ptiabler Plantacon shall apply themselves & their Labors in a large and competent mann to the planting setting making and procuring of good & staple comodities in & vpon the said Land hereby graunted vnto them as Corne & silk grasse hemp flaxe pitch and tarrc soapshes and potashes Yron Clapboard and other the like materialls. IN WITNESS whereof the said President & Counsell haue to the one pt of this pte Indenture sett their seales And to th'other pt hereof the said John Peirce in the name of himself and his said Associates haue sett to his scale given the day and yeeres first aboue written.

LENOX (Seale.)

BK. (Seale.)

HAMILTON (Seale.)

WARWICK (Seale.)

SHEFFIELD (Seale.)

FERD. GORGES (Seale.)

On the *Verso* of the instrument is the following indorsment:—

Sealed and Delivered by my Lord Duke in the Psence of

EDWARD COLLINGWOOD, CLERK.

NOTE. The signatures, are those of the Duke of Lenox, the Marquis of Buckingham, the Marquis of Hamilton, the Earl of Warwick, Lord Sheffield, and Sir Ferdinando Gorges.





## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON.

COLONIAL, ENTRY BOOK, No. 59. pp. 101—108.

A Grant of the Province of Maine to S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges, and John Mason, Esq<sup>r</sup>. 10<sup>th</sup> of August, 1622.

This Indenture made the 10<sup>th</sup> day of August Anno Dom: 1622, & in the 20<sup>th</sup> yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereigne Lord James by the grace of God King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. Between the President & Councell of New England on y<sup>e</sup> one part, and S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges of London, Knight and Captaine John Mason of London Esquire on y<sup>e</sup> other part Wittnesseth that whereas our said Sovereigne Lord King James for the making a Plantacon & establishing a Colony or Colonies in y<sup>e</sup> country called or knowne by y<sup>e</sup> name of New England in America hath by his Highness Letters Patents under the Great Seale of England bearing date at Westminster the 31<sup>st</sup> day of November, in the 18<sup>th</sup> yeare of his Reigne given granted and confirmed unto the Right Honorable Lodowick Duke of Lenox George Marquiss of Buckingham, James Marquiss Hamilton, Thomas Earle of Arundell, Robert Earle of Warwick, S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges Kn<sup>t</sup>, and diverse others whose names are expressed in y<sup>e</sup> said Letters Patents, their successors and assigns that they shalbe one Body Politique and Corporate perpetual and that they should have perpetuall Succession & one Comon Seale or Seales to serve for the said Body and that they and their Successors shalbe knowne called and incorporated by the name of the President & Councell established at Plymouth in the County of Devon for the planting ruling and governing of New England in America. And also hath of his especiall grace certaine knowledge and meer motion for him his heyres and successo<sup>rs</sup>: & given granted and confirmed unto the said President and Councill and their successo<sup>rs</sup> under the reservacons, limitacons and declaracons in the said Letters Patents expressed. All that part or porcion of that country now comonly called New England w<sup>ch</sup> is situate lying and being between the Latitude of 40 and 48 Degrees northerly Latitude together w<sup>th</sup> the Seas and Islands lying w<sup>th</sup>in one hundred miles of any part of the said Coasts of the Country aforesaid and also all y<sup>e</sup> Lands, Soyle, grounds, havens, ports, rivers, mines as well Royal mines of Gold and Silver as other mines minerals pearls and pretious stones woods, quarryes, marshes, waters fishings hunting, hawking fowling comodities and hereditaments whatsoever together w<sup>th</sup> all prerogatives jurisdictions royaltyes privileges franchises and preheminiences within any of the said Territories and precincts thereof whatsoever, To have hold possess and enjoy all and singular the said lands and premises in the said Letters Patent granted or mentioned to be granted unto y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill their Successo<sup>rs</sup> and assigns for ever to be holden of his Ma<sup>ty</sup> his heyres and successo<sup>rs</sup> as of his highness Manor of East Greenwich in the County of Kent in free and common Socage and not in capite or by Kn<sup>ts</sup> service — Yeelding & paying to the King's Ma<sup>ty</sup> his heyres and successo<sup>rs</sup> the one fifth part of all Gold and Silver ore that from time to time and att all times from the date of the said Letters Patents shall be there gotten had or obtained for all services duties or demands as in & by his highnes said Letters Pateents amongst other divers things therein contayned more fully and at large it doth appeare, And whereas the said President & Councill have upon mature deliberacon thought fitt for the better furnishing and furtherance of the Plantacon in those parts to appropriate and allot to severall and particuler persons diverse parcells of Lands within the precincts of the aforesaid granted pmisses by his Ma<sup>ty</sup> said Letters Patents. Now this Indenture witnesseth that y<sup>e</sup> s<sup>d</sup> President and Councill of their full free and mutuall consent as well to the end that all the Lands, woods, lakes, rivers, waters, Islands and fishings w<sup>th</sup> all other the Traffiques profits & comodities whatsoever to them or any of them belonging and hereafter in these presents mentioned may be wholly and intirely invested appropriated severed and settled in and upon y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges & Cap<sup>t</sup> John Mason their heyres and assigns for ever as for diverse speciall services for the advancement of the s<sup>d</sup> Plantacons and other good and sufficient causes and consideracons them especially thereunto moving have given granted bargained sold assigned aliened sett over enfeofed & confirmed — And by these presents doe give grant bargain sell assigne alien sett over and confirme unto y<sup>e</sup> s<sup>d</sup> S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges & Cap<sup>t</sup> John Mason their heirs and assigns all that part of y<sup>e</sup> maine land in New England lying vpon y<sup>e</sup> Sea Coast betwixt y<sup>e</sup> rivers of Merimack & Sagadahock and to y<sup>e</sup> furthest heads of y<sup>e</sup> said Rivers and soe forwards up into the land westward untill threescore miles be finished from y<sup>e</sup> first entrance of the aforesaid rivers and half way over that is to say to the midst of the said two rivers w<sup>ch</sup> bounds and limits the lands aforesaid together w<sup>th</sup> all Islands & Islets w<sup>th</sup> in five leagues distance of y<sup>e</sup> premises and abutting vpon y<sup>e</sup> same or any part or parcell thereof. As also all the lands, soyle, grounds, havens, ports, rivers, mines, minerals, pearls, pretious stones woods quarryes marshes waters fishings hunting hawking fowling and other



comodities and hereditam<sup>ts</sup> whatsoever w<sup>th</sup> all and singular their apurtenances together w<sup>th</sup> all prerogatives rights royalties jurisdictions privileges franchises libertyes preheminences marine power in and vpon y<sup>e</sup> said seas and rivers as alsoe all escheats and casualties thereof as flotsom petson lagon w<sup>th</sup> anchorage and other such duties immunities sects isletts and apurtenances whatsoever w<sup>th</sup> all ye estate right title interest claime and demands whatsoever w<sup>ch</sup> y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councell and their successo<sup>rs</sup> of right ought to have or claime in or to y<sup>e</sup> said porcons of lands rivers and other y<sup>e</sup> premisses as is aforesaid by reason or force of his highnes said Letters Patents in as free large ample and beneficiall maner to all intents constructions and purposes whatsoever as in and by the said Letters Patents y<sup>e</sup> same are among other things granted to y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councell afores<sup>d</sup> Except two fifths of y<sup>e</sup> Oare of Gold and Silver in these pnts hereafter expressed w<sup>ch</sup> said porcons of lands w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> apurtenances the said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason w<sup>th</sup> the consent of y<sup>e</sup> President & Councell intend to name y<sup>e</sup> PROVINCE OF MAINE To have and to hould all the said porcons of land, Islands rivers and premisses as aforesaid and all and singler other y<sup>e</sup> comodities and hereditam<sup>ts</sup> hereby given granted aliened entfeoffed and confirmed or meneoned or intended by these presents to be given granted aliened entfeoffed and confirmed w<sup>th</sup> all and singular y<sup>e</sup> apurtenances and every part and parcell thereof unto y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason their heyres and assignes for ever, To be holden of his said Ma<sup>ty</sup> his heyres and successo<sup>rs</sup> as of his Highnes Manor of East Greenwich in y<sup>e</sup> County of Kent in free and common Socage and not in capite or by Kn<sup>ts</sup> service. Nevertheless w<sup>th</sup> such exceptions reservacious limitations and declaracions as in y<sup>e</sup> said Letters Patents are at large expressed yeelding & paying unto our Sovereigne Lord the King his heyres & successo<sup>rs</sup> the fifth part of all y<sup>e</sup> oare of gold and silver that from time to time and att all times hereafter shall be there gotten had and obtayned for all services duties and demands. And alsoe yeelding and paying unto the said President and Councell and their Successors yerely the sum of Tewn shillings English money if it be demanded. And the said President and Councell for them and their Successo<sup>rs</sup> doe covenant and grant to and w<sup>th</sup> the said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason ther heires and assignes from and after the enscaling and delivery of these presents according to y<sup>e</sup> purport true intent and meaning of these presents that they shall from henceforth from time to time for ever peaceably and quietly have hold possess and enjoye all y<sup>e</sup> aforesaid Lands Islands rivers and premisses w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> apurtenances hereby before given and granted or meneoned or intended to be hereby given and granted and every part & parcell thereof w<sup>th</sup> out any lett disturbance denyall trouble interrupcion or evicon of or by y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill or any person or persons whatsoever claiming by from or under them or their successo<sup>rs</sup> or by or under their estate right title or Interest, And y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill for them and their Successo<sup>rs</sup> doe further Covenant and grant to & w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges & Capt. John Mason their heyres and assignes by these presents that they y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill shall at all times hereafter vpon reasonable request at y<sup>e</sup> only proper cost and charges in the Law of y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges & Capt. John Mason their heyres and assignes doe make performe suffer exccute and willingly consent unto any further act or acts conveyance or conveyances assurance or assurances whatsoever for y<sup>e</sup> good and perfect investing assuring and conveying and sure making of all the aforesaid porcons of Lands Islands rivers and all and singuler their apurtenances to y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason their heyres and assignes as by them their heyres and assignes or by his their or any of their Councill learned in y<sup>e</sup> Law shall bee devised advised or required. And further it is agreed by and between the said parties to these presents and y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Captaine John Mason for them their heyres executors administrators and assignes doe covenant to and w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill and their successo<sup>rs</sup> by these presents that if at any time hereafter there shall be found any oare of gold and silver within y<sup>e</sup> ground in any part of y<sup>e</sup> said premisses that then they y<sup>e</sup> said S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason their heyres and assignes shall yield & pay vnto y<sup>e</sup> said President and Councill their successo<sup>rs</sup> and assignes one fifth part of all such gold and silver oare as shall be found within and vpon y<sup>e</sup> premisses and digged and brought above ground to be delivered above ground & that always within reasonable and convenient time if it be demanded after y<sup>e</sup> finding getting and digging vp of such oare as aforesaid w<sup>th</sup> out fraud or covin and according to y<sup>e</sup> true intent and meaning of these Presents. And y<sup>e</sup> s<sup>d</sup> S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason doe further covenant for them their heyres and assignes that they will establish such government in y<sup>e</sup> s<sup>d</sup> porcons of lands and Islands granted unto them and y<sup>e</sup> same will from time to time continue as shall be agreeable as here as may be to y<sup>e</sup> Laws and Customs of y<sup>e</sup> realme of England, and if they shall be charged at any time to have neglected their duty therein that then they will reforme the same according to y<sup>e</sup> directions of the President and Councill or in defaulte thereof it shall be lawfull for any of y<sup>e</sup> agrieved inhabitants or planters being tenn<sup>ts</sup> vpon y<sup>e</sup> said Lands to appeale to y<sup>e</sup> Chief Courts of Justices of y<sup>e</sup> President and Councill. And y<sup>e</sup> s<sup>d</sup> S<sup>r</sup> Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason doe covenant and grant to and w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup>



said President and Councill their successors & assignes by these presents, that they ye said Sr Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason shall and will before ye expiration of three years to be accompted from ye day of ye date hereof have in or vpon the said porcons of lands or some p<sup>r</sup> thereof one parte w<sup>th</sup> a competent guard and ten families at ye least of his Ma<sup>ty</sup> subjects resident and being in and vpon ye same premises or in default thereof shall and will forfeite and loose to the said President & Councill the sum of one hundred pounds sterling money and further that if ye said Sr Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason their heires and assignes shall at any time hereafter alien these premises or any part thereof to any forraigne nations or to any person or persons of any forraigne nation without ye speciall licence consent and agreement of ye said President and Councill their successors and assignes that then ye part or parts of the said lands so alienated shall immediately returne back againe to ye use of ye said President and Councill. And further know yee that ye said President and Councill have made constituted deputed authorized and appointed and in their place & stead doe put Capt. Rob<sup>t</sup> Gorges or in his absence to any other person that shall be their Govern<sup>r</sup> or other officer to be their true and lawfull attorney and in their name and stead to enter the said porcons of Lands and other the premises w<sup>th</sup> their appurtenances or into some part thereof in ye name of ye whole, for them and in their name to have and take possession and seizin thereof, or some part thereof in ye name of ye whole soe had and taken there for them and in their names to deliver the full and peaceable possession and seizin of all and singuler the said granted premises unto ye said Sr Ferdinando Gorges and Capt. John Mason or to their certaine attorney or attorneys in that behalf according to ye true intent and meaning of these presents, ratifying confirming all and allowing and whatsoever their said attorney shall doe in or about ye premises by these presents. In Witnesse whereof to one parte of these present Indentures remaining in the hands of Sr Ferdinando Gorges and Captaine John Mason the said President and Councill have caused their comon seale to be affixed and to the other of these present Indentures remaining in the custody of the said President and Councill the said Sr Ferdinando Gorges & Capt. John Mason have put to their hands and seales. Given ye day and yeare first above written.

## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON.

COLONIAL VOL. II. No. 6. pp. 5—7.

### MINUTES OF THE COUNCIL OF NEW ENGLAND.

Wednesday ye 24th of July 1622.

The Earle of Arundell. Sr. Ferd: Gorges.  
Mr. Secretary Calvert. Sr. Saml. Argall.

**Lord Dukes** It is ordered and agreed that the Lord Duke of Lenox have for his devident. devident and part of the wayne Land of New England in America, from ye middle of Sawahquatoek towards Sagadahoc, and his bounds that way to reach mid way betweene Sawahquatoek and Sagadahoc upon ye Coast. And to reach 30 miles backward into ye Mayne. And 3 Leagues into ye sea.

**Mr. Secretary** Mr. Secretary Calvert to begin his devident ye middle of Sagadahoc and to goe close to ye Lord Duke his bounds. And to have further into his devident the Island called by ye name of Setquin.

**The Earle of Arundles** The Earle of Arundele to have for his devident from ye middle of Sagadahoc, and to goe Northeast soe much on his side, as Mr. Secretary goes on ye other side upon ye Coast. And to reach miles backward into ye Mayne, and 3 leagues into ye Sea. And to have further into his devident ye Island called Menchigan.

**Tenure of the** It is propounded that ye Tenure in ye grand pattent is thought meet to bee held of ye Crowne of England by ye sword.

**Tenure of private planters.** And that private Planters shall hold of the Chamber of State to bee established there, and shall have power to create their owner Tenures to such as shall hold under them.

**Nova Albion.** The Country to bee called Nova Albion. That there may bee power given in the grand pattent to create Titles of Honour and precedence, soe as ye differ in nominacon from the titles used here in England.

**Touching the staying of the Timber.** Mr. Ratcliffe is sent for by a Messinger of the Chamber to attend Earle of Arundell, to morrow by two of ye clock, touching Timber stayd by his appointment in ye woods at Whiteby.





Two Islands reserved for the publike plantacon. It is thought meet that the two great Islands lying in ye river of Sagadahoc bee reserved for the publike plantacon.

A place for the publike City. Further that a place bee reserved betweene the branches of the two rivers for a publike City.

Touching ye renewing of the pattent. Mr. Thompson is appointed to attend the Lords for a Warrant to Mr. Attorney generall for drawing ye new Pattents, and Sr. Henry Spilman is desired to attend Mr. Attorney thereabouts.

The Lord Dukes and ye Earle of Arundells devidents, sett downe by Sr. Ferd : Gorges upon view of ye mapps.

The Lord Dukes The Lord Duke of Lenox is to have for a part of his Devident Devident. of ye lands in New England, from the midst of the river called Sawahquatoek 15 English Miles in a straight line upon the sea coast, to ye Eastward of ye River. And 30 English miles backward of all the breadth afore-sd upp into the Mayne Land, North or North and by west, as ye Coast and River of Sawahquatoek lyeth, accounting 1760 yards to every mile, with all ye fishings, Bayes, Havens, Harbours and Islands lyeing or being within 9 miles directly into ye sea (Excepting such Island, as are allready granted etc. All lyeing betweene the degrees of 43 and 44 etc.)

The Earle of Arundells Devidt. The Earle of Arundell to have for a part of his dividnt from ye Southermost poynt of Pethippscott East 12 Miles in a straight lyne as the coast lyeth on ye sea shoare. And 30 miles by all that breadth upp into the Mane Land due North accounting 1760 yards to every mile, with all ye Fishings, Havens, Islands, etc. Lying and being within 9 miles direct-ly into the sea, etc. Together with ye Islands of Menehiggan etc. All lyeing betweene the Degrees of 43 & 44.

## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON.

### COLONIAL, VOL. II. No. 16.

#### A Cattalogue of such Pattentes as I know granted for making Plantacons In New England.

The Councell of Imps the Originall Patent granted to divers Lords some New England. times in the Custody of Tho. Eyles, The Lords granted others. 1622. 1. A Pattent to David Thompson M Jobe, M Sherwood of Plimouth for a pt of Piscattowa Riuer in New England

2. A Pattent for a Plantation att New Plimouth to make a Corporation weh is pformed (See ante p 118)

1628. 3. A Pattent of the bay of the Massechusets Bay 3 my. South of Charles Riuer and 3 myles North of Merrimake 50 myles by sea shore but now haue subingated most of the Cuntrey within thes 10 yeares

4. A Pattent granted to Capt. Jo. Mason of Agawam now pos'sed by the peple of the Massechusets.

5. A Pattent granted to Capt. Jo. Mason and Sir Fir: Gorges for discouery of the Great Lakes. nothing ther in done

6. A Pattent to Sir Fir: Gorges Capt Norton and others for the Riuer of Accamenties weh was renewed by Edward Godirey 1638: & p'palated wth inhab-  
tance most att his charge and regulated 25 yeares, but now old by the vnlmated power of the Mathesusets and by them ealed Yorke as by pet'os may appeer.

7. A Pattent to Sir Fir: Gorges and divers others of a plantation and the sea coast of Pascatowae now . . . it and sundery others, vnder the Massechusets.

8. A Pattent granted to Ed. Hilton, by him sould to mechants of Bristoll they sould it to my Lo. Say and Brokes, they to sume of Shrusbery: in Passatowa many towns now gouerned by ye Mathesusets

9. A Pattent granted to Jo. Stratton for Cape Porpase.

11, 12. Two Pattents to Ric. Vines & Tho: Lias for pt of Saco Riuer.

13. A Pattent to Capt. Tho: Camoke (Cammock) for Blake (Black) poynt.

14. A Pattent to Mr. Trelany of Plimouth for Cape Elizabeth.

15. A Pattent to Capt Leint for a Plantation att Casco.

16. A Pattent for a plantation att Peechipscot.



17. A Pattent for the Corporation of New Plimouth for Kenebecke (Jan. 13, 1629.)

21. A Pattent to Oliuer Godf . . . & others for Cap. Nosick, (Neddick.)

18. A Pattent for Mr Crispe and others for Sagadahock.

19. A Pattent for Mr Aldsworth and other of Bristol for a plantation att Pem- aquard

20. A Pattent of Richmonds Land and 1500 ackers one the Mayne.

Quere what other Pattents haue binne granted by the Earle of Warwick, Lord Gorges, Sir: Gorges and others presidents of New England Company.

Noat in all thes Pattents ther is conditions to bee pformed and bounded wth re- servations of Rentes

And sundery places yet to grant, as I humbly conceue by this Ho. Stat and not by the State of the Mathesusets wch yf not louked into may bee the inuinsible State of Amerria

The Pattents aboue out of the bounds of The Mathesusets or the vnited Collones and of whome the sd vnited Collones as Conecticut, Islands, of Erras Newhaven and The rest had ther Pattents noe appeales suffered from the Mathesusets in New England to ould England.

neather the Pattents to the Estwards ener had id. of their vast beneuolence they haue had out of England and yearly haue what hath binne collected and heere disposed of is knowne to them and ther Agents heere, whether Godfreys letter to the Ho. State heere ware soe Capitall a crime as to lose his Estate

yf the Mathesusets bee suffered to bee a free State the danger great may as yet onely by letter bee pruned yf by Comittion or a generall Gouvernor at p'sent the consequence I leave.

*indorsed.* A List of sundery Pattents that haue binne granted for New England.

## APPENDIX E.

[The popular belief has been that the Plymouth Colony designed to settle within the limits of the Dutch territory in the neighborhood of Manhattan, and such is the statement of Bradford. They negotiated with the Dutch for this purpose prior to their departure from Holland, and the application in their behalf was rejected. This is shown by the following papers, copied from the Holland Documents, published by the State of New York. Doc. Hist. Vol. 1.]

### PETITION OF THE DIRECTORS OF THE NETHERLAND COMPANY.

TO THE PRINCE OF ORANGE, &c.

Referred to the Deputies of the Board of Admiralty who are invited here for the 15th instant. Done 12th Feb. 1620. (signed) C. Aerssens 1620.

The Directors of the Company trading to New Netherlands, situate in latitude from 40 to 45 degrees, between New France and Virginia, reverently represent that they, the petitioners, have, as discoverers and first finders of said countries, traded hither now several years, in virtue of a certain general Charter from the High and Mighty Lords States General, dated the 10th March 1614; that they, also, have delivered to their High Mightinesses their written report, with a map of the situation and usefulness of said countries.

And whereas the petitioners' Charter has expired so that every one is now at liberty to trade there, they have again sent thither two ships, in order to pre-



serve the reputation of said trade; some vessels have been likewise sent by others traders, exclusive of the Company.

Now it happens, that there is residing at Leyden a certain English Preacher, versed in Dutch language who is well inclined to proceed thither to live, assuring the petitioners that he has the means of inducing over four hundred families to accompany him thither, both out of the country and England, provided they would be guarded and preserved from all violence on the part of other potentates, by the authority and under the protection of your Princely Excellency and the High and Mighty Lords States General, in the propagation of the true, pure Christian religion, in the instruction of the Indians in that country in true learning, and in converting them to the Christian Faith, and thus through the mercy of the Lord, to the greater glory of this country's government, to plant there a new Commonwealth, all under and command of your Princely Excellency and the High and Mighty Lords States General. And whereas they, the Petitioners, have experienced that his Majesty of Great Britain would be disposed to people the aforesaid with the English nation, and by force to render fruitless their possession and discovery, and thus deprive this State of its right and apparently with ease surprise the ships of this country which are there, and are ordered to remain there the whole year; wherefore they, the petitioners, pray and request that your Princely Excellency may benignly please to take all the aforesaid into favorable consideration, so that, for the preservation of this country's rights, the aforesaid Minister and the four hundred families may be taken under the protection of this country, and that two ships of war may be provisionally despatched to secure to the State the aforesaid Countries, inasmuch as they would be of much importance, whenever the West India Company is established, in respect to the large abundance of timber fit for ship building &c., as may be seen by the accompanying report. On all which

(Endorsed) Petition of the Directors of the Company trading to New Netherlands.  
12 February, 1620.

#### FURTHER RESOLUTION OF THE STATES GENERAL ON THE PRECEDING PETITION.

Tuesday, the 10th March 1620.

Folio 75. Resolved that the opinion of his Excellency shall be first obtained on the Petition presented by the Directors of the Company trading to New Netherland, before acting on it and on the advice of the Deputies from the Board of Admiralty.

#### FURTHER RESOLUTIONS OF THE STATES GENERAL.

Friday the 10th of April, 1620.

Folio 113. Read the Petition of the Directors of the New Netherland Company, that their request should be favorably disposed, and resolved to obtain his Excellency's opinion thereon.

#### RESOLUTION OF THE STATES GENERAL ON THE PETITION OF THE NEW NETHERLAND COMPANY.

Saturday, the 11th April, 1620.

Folio 115. The petition of the Directors of the New Netherland Company, that they, for the people of said Island, may be assisted with two ships of war, is again rejected.





## APPENDIX F.

COMMISSION TO SIR FERDINANDO GORGES AS GOVERNOR OF NEW  
ENGLAND. BY THE KING.

Many festing Our Royall pleasure for the establishing a generall Govern'mt in Our Territorye of New England for prevention of those evils that otherwise might ensue for default thereof.

Forasmuch as we have understood and been credibly informed of the many inconsistencies and mischiefs that have growne and are like more and more to arise amongst Our Subjects already planted in the parts of New England by reason of the severall opinions differing humors, and many other differences springing up between them and daily like to encrease and for that it rested not in the power of the Councell of New England (By our Gracious ffather's royall Charter established for those affaires) to redress the same, without we take the whole manazing thereof into Our owne hands, and apply vnto Our immediate power and authority, which being perceived by the principall undertakers of those businesses, They have humbly resigned the said Charter unto us, that thereby there may bee a speedy order taken for reformation of the aforesaid Errors and mischiefs. And knowing it to be a Duty proper to our Royall justice not to suffer such numbers of Our people runne to ruine and so religious and good intents to languish for want of timely remedie and Soueraigne assistance Wee have therefore graciously accepted of the said Resignation and doe approve of their good affections to a service soe acceptable to God and to Us, And we have seriously advised with Our Councill both of the way of Reformation and of a person meet and able for that employment by whose grauity, moderation and experience wee have hopes to repair what is amiss and settle the said affaires to the good of Our people and honour of our Government. And for that purpose we have resolved with Our selfe to imploy Our Servant Ferdinando Gorges Knight, as well for that Our Gracious ffather of blessed memory as Wee have had for a long time good experience of his fidelity, circumspection and knowledge of his Governm't in Martiall and Civill affaires, besides his understanding of the state of those Countreys wherein he hath been an immediate mover, and a principall Actor, to the great prejudice of his estate, long troubles and the loss of many of his good friends and servants in making *the first discovery of these Coasts*, and taking *the first seizure thereof* as of right belongs to Us Our Crowne and dignity, and is still resolved according to his Gracious pleasure to prosecute the same in his own person, which resolution and most commendable affection of his to serve Us therein, as We highly approve. So We hold it a property of Our princely care to second him with Our Royall and ample authority Such as shall bee meet for an employment soe eminent and the performance of Our Service therein, whereof Wee have thought it fitt to make publick declaration of Our said pleasure That thereby it may appear to our good Subjects the resolution We have graciously to provide for the peace and future good of those whose affection leads them to any such vndertaking, and withall to signifye that Our further will and pleasure is, That none bee permitted to goe into any those parts to plant or inhabit. But that they first acquaint our said Governor therewith, or such other as shall bee deputed for that purpose during his aboad heer in England. And who are to receive from him or them allowance to pass with his or their further directions where to sitt downe most for their particular commodities and publick good of our Service (saving and reserving to all those that have joyned in the Surrender of the Great Charter of New England and have grants immediately to bee holden of Us, for their severall plantations in the said Countreys, free liberty at all times hereafter to go to themselves and also to send such numbers of people to their Plantations as by themselves shall be thought convenient.) Hereby strictly charging and commanding all our Officers and others to whom it shall or may appertaine, to take notice of this our pleasure and to be careful the same bee firmly observed as they or any of them shall answer the same at their uttermost perill. Given at the Court of Whitehall the 23d day of July 1637, and in the Sixteenth Yeare of Our Raigne.





## APPENDIX G.

The following paper filed in the British State Paper Office, in the year 1600, was brought to notice by *Sainsbury*, in his Calender of Colonial State Papers, Vol. I, page 4, a copy of which has been obtained since the foregoing pages were in type. It is referred to in note 2 on page 18, as bearing internal evidence that Sir Ferdinando Gorges was its author.

## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON, A. D. 1600.

## COLONIAL CORRESPONDENCE, VOL. I. No. 9.

Yt beinge a verrye noble action to enlarge a dominion, wheathr yt be by ope conquest, wheare resistance is made, or by plantinge vpon places neglected thorough the barbarousnes of the inhabitants or neyghbors, the most vertuous minds are easily taken w<sup>th</sup> fa seste hopes, ambition makinge a quicke sence of the good and easines, and conferringe the minds againste all difficulties, and th fore in this proposition of planting an Englishe Colloence in the no the weste of America: conceiuing that the vttermoste arguments w<sup>th</sup> the greatest hopes are expreste for the actio<sup>n</sup> I thincke yt is intended that the difficulties should be examined, thatt by the comparison; the possibility or glory of the worke mighte be for scene: yt is granted the strengthe of navy giues vs, the necessity of th maintenance butt how owre State stands more dangerous than eu<sup>r</sup> is not proved, and as itt is to bee wishte, that wee had plases of o<sup>r</sup> owne to furnishe soe necessary a comoditie as apertinentts to o<sup>r</sup> shippinge, soe muste yt be examined, wheathr o<sup>r</sup> cuntry should not bee as muche wrested or more to record them thence then by the wayes they haue them; and to the argument that god foresawe or necessities to come of these provisions and therefore discovered to henry the 7<sup>th</sup> thes cuntries, yt weare to be assured largely, butt heare this only god foresaw from the beginninge, his purpose to haue loue amongstee all men. and therefore gaue aid on daunce and necessitie to countries to mak traffike, and expresse an vse one of another, by which way of traffike wee are furnishte plentiouslye of all those commodities, nethr is yt to bee feared, that any tyme canne bringe forth a matter say of trade to us except all the world att once should torne againste vs, and then wee muste keepe the new gotten by miracle and defend the ould hardly, and many examples make plaine and nowe w<sup>th</sup> vs wee see, thatt soe longe as a State resists the sword and canne furnishe mony or oth<sup>r</sup> matter for exchange, trafficke, will bringe the enemies moste forbidden comoditie in sufficiently, soe as yf the only benefitt weare the havinge a land from whence to fetch things necessary for our shippinge, yt weare like to bee boughte to deere, since w<sup>th</sup> the bringinge in of those trades from the easte, wee carry out our aboundinge commodities to the enrichinge of o<sup>r</sup> state w<sup>th</sup> is sayde should likewise bee done this way, in two kindes, one by trafficke w<sup>th</sup> those nations that come theth<sup>r</sup> for fishe, and then over land, both w<sup>th</sup> wayes require much tyme to bringe them to a ripenes, and in the trade over land there riseth many difficulties, first accordinge to the expression made yt seemed to bee an infinite greate mayne of land, & wheare yt is said the inhabitants speake of a bitter water w<sup>th</sup> affection would vnderstand for salte yt may rightlier be conceived to bee some lake w<sup>th</sup> are common in waste countries and of suche nature, the watters of them, thorowe the seprament of the earth, and the sullinge in of the leues havinge noe currantes to cleuse, that they euer yeld a bitter taste. & all thoughte at the firste and vpon the vttermoste skirte of a land wee find butt a naked people, & suche as while wee stay not to giue them law: butt flatter them w<sup>th</sup> toyes, and exchange to theyre advantage, & so depte, appear well inclined & apte to resene vs, yett by the comparison of this plases w<sup>th</sup> others that haue bene discovered yt may be conceived that they haue more with in land townes peopled, & will when they shall see that wee attempte vpon them, as a people that, will p<sup>r</sup>uade accordinge to owre knowledges theyre good or foree yt, then will they putt them selves into resistance, nothinge beinge able to change the forme of religion in the moste barbarous; but the spirite of reuela-



tion or an absolute conqueste; neyth<sup>r</sup> is example only in many ages able to alter the habite of a lyfe confirmed in libertye and idleness to order & industrie, especially in could regions w<sup>ch</sup> brings forth a dull inflexible people, obstinately affectinge barbarous liberty, & jelious of all authority through much to theyre good, yf they had sense of civility to examine yt by; soe as I finde little foundation for hope of trafficke into eyth<sup>r</sup> partts untell longe tyme had made vs masters of att least all the convenient passages & those secured by fortifications or inhabitants subjecte to o<sup>r</sup> lause w<sup>ch</sup> must firste haue a beginninge, & that is to bee examined how yt may rise from commodities of the fisheinge & exchange of trafficke & to invite vs the rath<sup>r</sup> lett vs admitt, the trafficke to Musconia, is a hevey journey to o<sup>r</sup> marchants, in respecte of the lengthe of the voyage & couldness of the region w<sup>ch</sup> suffers butt one voyage in a yeare, & there owne marchants subjecte att pleasure of the prinse to arrests of th<sup>r</sup> psons & goods and to passe by a straighte sea of the denmarks stronge in shippinge and of whome wee cane haue noe security, and thatt the easterlings may increase in there mislike and injuries towards vs wheareof they have given aparent marks, and from hence lett vs conclude that anoth<sup>r</sup> trade were more convenient for vs, and that this land of new found land, for the shortenes of the passage and openesse of the sea, & lesse intemperate could then Musconia, havinge the commodities necessary for shippinge & trade settled there is more convenient, admittinge the necessities for ower navye to be there in abundance lett vs examine how a trade may be settled there & whatt may be the difficulties in their trade as well as in the settlinge; wherein wee muste somethinge examine the nature of the countrey, w<sup>ch</sup> the state and inclinacion of o<sup>r</sup> people, & the correspondansye of that countrey w<sup>ch</sup> oth<sup>r</sup> new discoveries, peopled w<sup>ch</sup> p<sup>r</sup>adventure at the firste apprehension make this worke seeme the easier: The countrey seems by the preposicion to be could, and to bringe forth commodities as could countries doth w<sup>ch</sup> industry, o<sup>r</sup> countrey people, havinge euer bine bred w<sup>ch</sup> plenty in a more temperate ayre, and naturally not very industrious, att home and lesse to seeke out places, wheare th<sup>r</sup> labor<sup>r</sup> are present and ther hopes a littell differd, wheareof we have too good experience by Ireland, w<sup>ch</sup> beinge nere vs, a temperate and fertile countrey, subjecte to our owne lawes and halfe civil, the portts and many places friendly inhabited, notw<sup>th</sup>standinge many of good reputacon, became undertakers there in the tyme of pease, could not invite our people, neyther in any competent numbers, nor constantly in th<sup>r</sup> action, the reason beinge chiefly that in climatts that bringe forth, butt yearlye riches and that w<sup>ch</sup> labor, a stocke and industrie must be adventured vpon expectacon: o<sup>r</sup> able men are in the same trade att home alreddy, and loue ease and securitie and the poore men wants welthe to disburse any thinge, wants wisdom to foresee the good, & wants vertu to haue patiens, and constantly to attend the reward of a good worke & industry: Those new discoveries inhabited by the portingalls & Spaniards, was in regions that although they were intemperately hotte, yett bringe forth by reason of there heate and fertillity, gould, silver, pretious stones, spices, riche dyes & druggs, w<sup>ch</sup> they have eyther for the gatheringe or by trafficke for small exchange w<sup>ch</sup> was such a profitable increase, as att there returne both the princes and people we are incouraged to inhabit not only there butt vpon all the passages and borders, that mighte eyth<sup>r</sup> winne those cuntries to them or serue to keep out others or them in th<sup>r</sup> trade theath<sup>r</sup>, the countries for the most p<sup>r</sup>te all wheare they doe inhabit yieldinge abundance of all things both for vse and pleasure w<sup>ch</sup> small industry; and for the intemperateness of the some for heate, by causes and forme of th<sup>r</sup> howses they w<sup>ch</sup> as little labor and coste saue themselves fro that ayre, as wee in america are to doe by stoves from the cold. The generall discovery beinge made, a particular discovery is to be made, of the place wheare or nation should settle, yf there be hope eyther of mines or other good returne that may draw one a secondinge of the action, w<sup>ch</sup> is moste to be doubted; for yf her Ma<sup>ty</sup> shall only countenance yt and recommede yt to her marchnts whome may have for inco<sup>r</sup>ragm<sup>t</sup> the difficulties of the esterne fruits and a gracious fredo<sup>r</sup> of the trafficke of America to bee only res<sup>ed</sup> to the firste adventurers, yett when soe great a charge muste be firste issued as the sendinge of a competent number to inhabit w<sup>ch</sup> all necessarys requisitt for new inhabitants, and victuals for a hole yeare for them, & that th<sup>r</sup> returne shall bringe home nothinge above the ordinary frayte of fish and a narracion of the sighte of Cuntrey and hope of better by the next adventure, yt is feared that the ordinary wayes of traed, beinge less chargeable, they will content themselves, and looke vpon the dangers and alterations a farr off, and eyther slowlye or not all giue second; and wheare yt is propounded that o<sup>r</sup> poore of England, may be easily sent theth<sup>r</sup> by the shippes that go to fishe yearlye they beinge delincred a . . . the portts, w<sup>ch</sup> victuals for a yeere, or common people of England are not riche, & doe almoste repine att those most behouefull impositions w<sup>ch</sup> are layed vpon them, for leveinge of souldiers & yett those willinge subsidies and payments they graunt to her Ma<sup>ty</sup> for iuste reasons deputed in open p<sup>r</sup>liment, then we muste remember whatt pore they are thatt are requisite to people a new Conqueste, not the impotent . . . they muste remaine burden to the p<sup>r</sup>ishes, and then what charge would be requisite to eury man, w<sup>ch</sup> is not onely competent ap<sup>r</sup>rell for one yeare, money to bringe him to the porte, &



armes of defence and offence, butt victualls for a year & to plante and build  
 with all, for wantinge eyther sufficiensy vntill the freute of there labors shalbe  
 reapte to them, or wantinge indystry to make sufficiensy, & not havinge wheare-  
 with to exchange for victualls with the savadge people they shalbe forste to doe out-  
 rages wch will shutt vp all way of trafficke or intelligens with those people, and  
 cause them to stand vpon force, before we . . . shalbe able to force them, or well  
 to defend or selves: the number for the firste and seconde is likewise to bee had  
 in consideration, for the firste ytt cannott be lesse then may bee thoughte com-  
 potent, to fortifye and secure the harboare, to plante and geather provision for  
 the nexte yeare, & to defend what soeuer they shall take for theyrs with out they  
 bee lodgings, and att the firste to avoyde the losse of tyme in the trade, there  
 would bee builded convenient lodgings and storehouses, for the safe-keepinge  
 and exchanginge of suche commodities, and should a trafficke betweene vs the  
 people or others toe fishe, & the second moste pforme as much with an in-  
 crease furth of a competent troope or troopes, to discover the riuers and the  
 lande, wheather with mines or other marchandise may bee presently putt in vse  
 to giue incorragement to th . . . adventurers, for certaine charge & vncertaine re-  
 tortes will quickly quaille . . . an action thowghe well founded, and this may  
 well bee lookte for, that the inhabitants, will giue vs noe better way then wee  
 can forse, & will easly insulte vpon or weakenes yf they can find an advantage,  
 besids wee are to conceaue, thatt the frenche whoe haue pretenses, & haue a  
 secreat trafficke thethr; will repine & resiste yf they can or dare, all vnder the  
 subiection of the Spaniards are declared opositts, & wee muste resolute thatt the  
 kinge & thatt state will haue his eyes open vpon ower actions, and will yf hee  
 cane forse vs from any benefite, att leaste wee muste looke that from all his partts  
 or wheare his seas thatt hee can comand . . . lett vs in any trafficke from the  
 sowthe he will barr thatt, neyther shall he need any of those trafficks thatt plase  
 will yeald vs, since bothe the easterlinges and dutches whoe haue greater trade  
 into museouia then . . . will furliishe him of all needfull things thence thatt are  
 to bee had in th . . . p'te of America we pretend too. Now thorowe all these diffi-  
 culties, yf the prinse would assiste yt in p'te & her marchants thatt are well af-  
 fected goe liberallye into yt, & that the countries mighte bee stirred to an assist-  
 ance by men in some meante measure, and some gentlemen moued to bee ventur-  
 ers, thatt should foresee not only the vndertakinge butt the secondinge; then I  
 conceave that a worthy generall beinge chosen thatt mighte haue a Royall com-  
 mission, and weare quallifide to iudge of the sighte of phases for strengthe, & for  
 comodities, would exercise justice in the to the presise the merchants adven-  
 turers & gentlemen or others that should thr p'sone . . . would keepe his  
 troopes in obedience, indystrye, & vse elemensy & justice to the inhabitinge, and  
 yt mighte be a glorious action, for or prinse and countrie, honorable for the gen-  
 erall and adventurers and in tyme profitable, to the generall and p'ticular, & I  
 doubt not an acceptab. service to god, the purpose and execution beinge to Mag-  
 nifie his name in the extending of his worde, thoughe the example of or savior and  
 his desiples is preacheinge, butt not compellinge, vnlesse we may make vse of this  
 thatt the firste tyme he sente forth his desiples hee willed them to carry nothinge  
 nor to care for any thinge, and the nexte tyme he commanded him thatt had a  
 Coate to sell itt and buy





## APPENDIX H.

On page 42, note, reference is made to a paper addressed to the King, by the Scotch adventurers, REASONS ALLEDGED FOR HOLDING PORT ROYAL, which is of so much historie interest and value that we give the same in full, copied from the British State Paper Office, and not heretofore published.

## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, LONDON.

## COLONIAL, VOL. 5. No. 102. T

Immediately about the time that Columbus discovered the Isle of Cuba, Sebastian Chabot set out from England by Henrie the seuenth did first discover the continent of America, beginning at the Newfoundland, and thereafter going to the Gulph of Canada and from thence hauing scene Cap Bretton all along the Coast to Florida, By which discovery his Ma<sup>tie</sup> hath the title to Virginia, New England and New Scotland, as being then first discovered by Chabot at the charges of the K of England.

The French after this neglecting the knowledge they had thereafter by Jaques Cartier of the river of Canada as a cold climate, or as it may bee in regard it was challenged as first discovered by the English, having a great desire to possesse themselves in some part of America, they planted first a Colony vnder the charge of Mons<sup>r</sup> Villegas now in Brasill, and an other vnder the charge of Mons<sup>r</sup> Laudoniere in Florida, from both which they were expelled by the Spaniards.

Then giving ouer all hope of attempting anything that was belonging to the Spaniards and pressing by all meanes to have some interest in America, notwithstanding that the English (though they were not able to possesse the whole at first) had possessed themselves of that continent, discovered by them, by a Colonie in the South part thereof now called Virginia, and by an other in the North part thereof now called New England and New Scotland planted by Justice Popham.

The French in the time of Henry the Fourth vnder the charge of Mons<sup>r</sup> Poutrincourt hauing scene all the coasts of Newengland and Newscotland to both which parts they did then beginne to claime right. They seated themselves in Port Royal, out of which as soone as it was made knowne to the English they were dis-planted by Sr. Samuel Argall, as having wrongfully intruded themselves within those bounds, which did belong to this Crowne, both by discovery and possession.

The remainder of this French Collony not hauing occasion to bee transported to France, stayed still in the Countrie, yet they were so neglected by the State, not owning them any more and hardly supplied in that which was necessary for them by voluntary adventurers, who came to trade in hope of their commodities in exchange of what they brought, and during the time of King James there was no complaint made vpon Sr. Samuel Argall for hauing dis-planted them, and they were now lately glad to demand that protection from his Ma<sup>tie</sup> which was not afforded them from any other. Whereby it may evidently appeare that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> title was thought good. Otherwise it is likely that the French King, if any wrong had beene done unto him, would haue sought to haue had the same repaired, either by Treatie or otherwise. But without making either any priunt complaint, or yet doing any publick Act against the same, They went next and seated themselves vpon the Northside of the river of Canada at Kebeek, a place wherunto the English by a preceding title might likewise haue claime right. But small notice was taken thereof till during the time of the late warre, a Commission was giuen by his Ma<sup>tie</sup> to remove them from thence, which was accordingly performed, the place being taken a little after the peace was concluded, which at that time had not come to the takers knowledge, and a Colonie of Scottish was planted at Port Royal, which had neuer beene repossessed nor claimed by the French since they were first removed from the same.

This businesse of Port Royal cannot be made liable to the articles of the peace, seeing there was no Act of hostilities committed thereby, a Colonny onely being planted vpon his Ma<sup>tie</sup> owne ground, according to a patent granted by his Ma<sup>tie</sup> late deare father and his Ma<sup>tie</sup> self, hauing as good right therunto as to any part



of that Continent, and both the patent and possession taken thereupon was in the time of his Ma<sup>ty</sup> late deare father, as is set downe at length in the voyages written by Purchas. But neither by that possession nor by the subsequent plantation hath any thing beene taken from the French whereof they had any right at all, or yet any possession for the time, and what might haue beene done either before the warre or since the warre without a breach of peace, cannot justly bee complained vpon for being done at that time.

After that the Scottish Colony was planted at Port Royall, they and the French who dwelled there hauing met with the Commanders of the Natives, called by them Sagamoes did make choice of one of the cheefe of them called Sagamo Sigipt to come in name of the rest to his Ma<sup>ty</sup> for acknowledging of his title, and to become his Ma<sup>ty</sup>'s subjects, craving onely to bee protected by his Ma<sup>ty</sup> against their enemies, which demand of his was accepted by his Ma<sup>ty</sup> who did promise to protect them, as he reported to the rest at his returne.

Mons<sup>r</sup> La Tour, who was cheefe command<sup>r</sup> of the few French then in that countrie beeing neglected (as is said) by his owne Countriemen, and finding his Ma<sup>ty</sup>'s title not so much as questioned after theyr beeing expelled from Port Royall and the coming in of the Scottish necessary for his securitie did come along with the same Sagamo offering and demanding the like in name of the French who liue there, so that his Ma<sup>ty</sup> hath a good right to New Scotland by discouere, by possession of his Ma<sup>ty</sup>'s subjects, by removing of the French who had seated themselves at Port Royall and by Mons<sup>r</sup> La Tour the commander of them there his turning Tenant and by the voluntarie turning tenants of the rest to his Ma<sup>ty</sup>. And that no obstacle might remaine the very Sauages by their Commissioner willingly offering their obedience vnto his Ma<sup>ty</sup> so that his Ma<sup>ty</sup> now is bound to maintaine them both in regard of his subjects that haue planted there vpon his warrant and of the promise that he made to the Commissioner of the Natives that came to him from thence, as he promised to the Commissioner of the Natives, and as all the subjects of his Ma<sup>ty</sup>'s ancient Kingdome of Scotland did humbly entreat at their last conuention, as may appeare by a letter to his Ma<sup>ty</sup> from his Counsel to that effect.

*indorsed.* Reasons alleaged by the Scottish adventurers for the holding of Port Royall.

Discours

Concerning his Ma<sup>ty</sup>'s right and title to the port Royall and whole Canada, &c.  
9 Sept<sup>r</sup> 1630.  
Canada.

---

## APPENDIX I.

---

### CONSTITUENT CODE OF LAWS.

On page 91. Appendix A., Section 7 of the Virginia Charter of April 10, 1606, will be found a provision, that each of the Colonies is to have a Council which shall govern "*according to such Laues, Ordinances and Instructions as shall be in that behalf, given and signed by our Hand, or Sign Manual, and pass under the Priece Seal of our nation of England,*" &c.

This Constituent Code is contained in the following papers, under which the government at Sabino was ordained and established.

On the 19th of August, O. S., 1607, after taking possession, first came acts of religious worship — the Commission of Governor Popham was then read, author-



izing the conducting hither of a Colony — then the Charter of April 10, 1606 ; after that, the “ Laws to be observed and kept.” Then followed the election of President and other officers, in conformity with the instructions of the following Constituent Code of Laws, signed by King James, under date of Nov. 20, 1606, and of March 9, 1607.

Articles, Instructions and Orders made, sett down and established by us, twentieth day of November, in the year of our raigne of England, France, and Ireland the fourth and of Scotland the fortieth, for the good Order and Government of the two severall Colonies and Plantations to be made by our loving subjects, in the Country commonly called Virginia and America, between thirty four and forty five degrees from the Equinoctial line —

Instructions, &c for the 2 Colonies of Virginia

sociates, to deduce

Recital of former charter

Whereas, wee, by our letters pattents under our great seale of England, bearing date att Westminster, the tenth day of Aprill, in the year of our raigne of England, France, and Ireland the fourth, and of Scotland the 39<sup>th</sup> have given lycence to sundry our loving subjects named in the said letters pattents and to their associates, to deduce and conduct two severall collonies or plantations of sundry our loving people willing to abide and inhabit in certaine parts of Virginia and America, with divers preheminences, privileges, authorities and other things, as in and by the same letters pattents more particularly it appeareth, wee according to the effect and true meauing of the same letters pattents, doe by these presents, signed with our hand, signe manuel and sealed with our privy seale of our realme of England, establish and ordaine, that our trusty and well beloved Sir William Wade, Knight, our Lieutenant of our Tower of London, Sir Thomas Smith, Knight, Sir Walter Cope, Knight, Sir George More, Knight, Sir Francis Popham, Knight, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, Knight, Sir John Trevor, Knight, Sir Henry Montague, Knight, recorder of the City of London, Sir William Ronney, Knight, John Doddridge, Esq. Solicitor General, Thomas Warr, Esq. John Eldred of the city of London, merchant, Thomas James of the city of Bristol, merchant, and James Bagge of Plymouth, in the county of Devonshire, merchant, shall be our council for all matters which shall happen in Virginia of any the territories of America, between thirty-four and forty-five degrees from the equinoctial line northward, and the Islands to the severall collonies limited and assigned, and that they shall be called the King's Council of Virginia, which council or the most part of them shall have full power and authority, att our pleasure, in our name, and under us, our heires and successors, to give directions to the counceils of the severall collonies which shall be within any part of the said country of Virginia and America, within the degrees first above mentioned, with the Islands aforesaid, for the good government of the people to be planted in those parts, and for the good ordering and disposing of all causes happening within the same, and the same to be done for the substance thereof, as neer to the common lawes of England, and the equity thereof, as may be, and to passe under our seale, appointed for that council, which council, and every or any of them shall from time to time be increased, altered or changed, and others put in their places, att the nomination of us, our heires and successors, and att our and their will and pleasure, and the same council of Virginia, or the more part of them, for the time being shall nominate and appoint the first severall counceils of those severall counceills, which are to be appointed for those two severall colonies, which are to be made plantations in Virginia and America, between the degrees before mentioned, according to our said letters pattents in that behalfe made ; and that each of the same counceills of the same severall colonies shall, by the major part of them, choose one of the same council, not being the minister of God's word, to be president of the same council, and to continue in that office, by the space of one whole year, unless he shall in dyc or be removed from that office ; and wee doe further hereby establish and ordaine, that it shall be lawfull for the major part of either of the said counceills, upon any just cause, either absence or otherwise to remove the president or any others of that Council, from being either president or any of that council, and upon the deathes or removal of any of the presidents or council, it shall be lawfull for the major part of that council, to elect another in the

Nov. 20<sup>th</sup>

4<sup>th</sup> James

1<sup>st</sup>

in the same, and the common lawes

Councillors, how nominated—

Each Council to choose a president ; his continuance in office.

the mean time

Vacancies how supplied.





place of the party soe dying or removed, so alwaies, as they shal not be above thirteen of either of the said counsellours, and we doe establish Christian religion to be preached among the colonies and the savages.

God and Christian faith be preached, planted, and used, not only within every of the said several colonies, and plantations but alsoe as much as they may amongst the salvage people which doe or shall adjoine unto them, or border upon them, according to the doctrine, rights, and religion now professed and established within our realme of England, and that they shall not suffer any person, or persons to withdrawe any of the subjects or people inhabiting, or which shall inhabit within any of the said several colonies and plantations from the same, or from their due allegiance, unto us, our heirs and successors, as their immediate sovereigne under God, and if they shall find within any of the said colonies and plantations, any person or persons soe seeking to withdrawe any of the subjects of us, our heirs or successors, or any of the people of those lands or territories, within the precincts aforesaid, they shall with all diligence, him or them soe offending, cause to be apprehended, arrested, and imprisoned, until he shall fully and thoroughly reforme himselfe, or otherwise, when the cause so requireth, that he shall, with all convenient speed be sent into our realme of England, here to receive condigne punishment for his or their said offence or offences, and moreover wee doe hereby ordaine and establish for us, our heirs and successors, that all the lands, tenements, and hereditaments to be had and enjoyed by any of our subjects within the precincts aforesaid, shal be had and inherited and enjoyed, according as in the like estates they be had and enjoyed by the lawes within this realme of England; and that the offences of tumults, rebellion, conspiracies, mutiny and seditions in those parts which may be dangerous to the estates there, together with murder, manslaughter, incest, rapes, and adulteries committed in those parts within the precincts of any the degrees above mentioned (and noe other offences) shal be punished by death, and that without the benefit of the clergy, except in case of manslaughter, in which clergy is to be allowed, and that the several presidents and counsellis, and the greater number of them, within every of the several limits and precincts, shall have full power and authority, to hear and determine all and every the offences aforesaid, within the precinct of their several colonies, in manner and forme following, that is to say, by twelve honest and indifferent persons sworne upon the Evangelists, to be returned by suelh ministers and officers as every of the said presidents and counsellis, or the most part of them respectively shall assigne, and the twelve persons soe returned and sworne shall according to their evidence to be given unto them upon oath and according to the truth, in their consciences, either convict or acquit every of the said persons so to be accused and tried by them, and that all and every person or persons, which shall voluntarily confesse any of the said offences to be committed by him, shall, upon such his confession thereof, be convicted of the same, as if he had been found guilty of the same.

**Penalty for withdrawing any of the people from their religion or allegiance.**

How lands to descend and pass.

of tumults, rebellion, conspiracies, mutiny and seditions in those parts which may be dangerous to the estates there, together with murder, manslaughter, incest, rapes, and adulteries committed in those parts within the precincts of any the degrees above mentioned (and noe other offences) shal be punished by death, and that without the benefit of the clergy, except in case of manslaughter, in which clergy is to be allowed, and that the several presidents and counsellis, and the greater number of them, within every of the several limits and precincts, shall have full power and authority, to hear and determine all and every the offences aforesaid, within the precinct of their several colonies, in manner and forme following, that is to say, by twelve honest and indifferent persons sworne upon the Evangelists, to be returned by suelh ministers and officers as every of the said presidents and counsellis, or the most part of them respectively shall assigne, and the twelve persons soe returned and sworne shall according to their evidence to be given unto them upon oath and according to the truth, in their consciences, either convict or acquit every of the said persons so to be accused and tried by them, and that all and every person or persons, which shall voluntarily confesse any of the said offences to be committed by him, shall, upon such his confession thereof, be convicted of the same, as if he had been found guilty of the same.

How certain offences to be punished.

the greater number of them, within every of the several limits and precincts, shall have full power and authority, to hear and determine all and every the offences aforesaid, within the precinct of their several colonies, in manner and forme following, that is to say, by twelve honest and indifferent persons sworne upon the Evangelists, to be returned by suelh ministers and officers as every of the said presidents and counsellis, or the most part of them respectively shall assigne, and the twelve persons soe returned and sworne shall according to their evidence to be given unto them upon oath and according to the truth, in their consciences, either convict or acquit every of the said persons so to be accused and tried by them, and that all and every person or persons, which shall voluntarily confesse any of the said offences to be committed by him, shall, upon such his confession thereof, be convicted of the same, as if he had been found guilty of the same.

Trial by jury.

Judgement on standing mute, or by confession.

twelve jurors, as aforesaid; and that every person and persons soe convicted either by verdict, his own confession, or by standing mute, or by refusing directly to answer as aforesaid of any the offences beformentioned, the said presidents, or counsellis, or the greatest number of them within their several precincts and limits, where such conviction shall be had and made as aforesaid, shall have full power and authority, by these presents, to give judgment of death upon every such offender without the benefit of the clergy, except only in case of manslaughter, and noe person soe adjudged, attainted, or condemned shall be reprieved from the execution of the said judgment, without the consent of the said president and council or the most part of them by whom such judgment shall be given; and that noe person shall receive any pardon or be absolutely discharged of any the said offences, for which he shall be condemned to death as aforesaid, but by pardon of us, our heirs and successors, under our great seale of England; and wee doe in like manner establish and ordaine, if any either of

President and Council to pronounce judgment.

Reprieve by the president and council—pardoning by the King.

aforesaid, but by pardon of us, our heirs and successors, under our great seale of England; and wee doe in like manner establish and ordaine, if any either of





the said collonies shall offend in any of the offences before mentioned, within any part between the degrees aforesaid, out of the precincts or his or their collony, that then every such offender or offenders shall be tried and punished as aforesaid within his or their proper collony; and that every the said presidents and

councells, within their several limits and precincts, and the more part of them shall have power and authority by these presents, to hear and determine all and every other wrongs, trespasses, offences, and misdemeanors whatsoever, other than those before mentioned, upon accusation of any person, and prooffe thereof made, by sufficient witness upon oath; and that in all those cases the said president & council, and the greater number of them, shall have power and authority, by these presents respectively, as is aforesaid, to punish the offender or offenders, either by reasonable corporal punishment and imprisonment, or else by convenient fine, awarding damages or other satisfaction, to the party grieved, as to the said president and council, or to the more part of them, shall be thought fitt and convenient, having regard to the quality of the offence, or state of the cause; and that also the said president and council, shall have power and authority, by virtue of these presents, to punish all manner of excesses, through drunkennesse or otherwise, and all idle luytering and

vagrant persons, which shall be found within their several limits and precincts, according to their best discretion and with such convenient punishment, as they or the most part of them shall think fitt; alsoe our will and pleasure, concerning the judicial proceedings aforesaid, that the same shall be made and done summarily, and verbally without writing, until it come to the judgment or sentence, and yet nevertheless our will and pleasure

is, that every judgment and sentence hereafter to be given in any causes the aforesaid, or in any other of the said several presidents and councells or the greater number of them, within their several limits and precincts, shall be briefly and summarily registered into a book, to be kept for that purpose, together with the cause for which the said judgment or sentence was given; and that the said judgment and sentence, so registered and written, shall be subscribed with the hands or names of the said president, and council, or such of them as gave the judgment or sentence; alsoe our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby establish

and ordaine, that the said several collonies and plantations, and every person and persons of the same, severally and respectively, shall within every of their several precincts, for the space of five years, next after their first landing upon the said coast of Virginia and America, trade together all in one stocke or dividably, but in two or three stocks at the most, and bring not only all the

fruits of their labours there, but alsoe all such other goods and commodities which shall be brought out of England, or any other place, into the same collonies, into severall magazines or store houses, for that purpose to be made, and erected there, and that in such order, manner and form, as the council of that collony, or the more part of them shall sett downe and direct; and our will and pleasure is, and wee doe in like manner ordaine, that in every of the said collonies and plantations there shall be chosen there, elected yearly, by the president and council of every of the said several collonies and plantations or the more part of them, one person, of the same collony and plantation, to be treasurer or cape-merchant of the same collony and plantation to take charge and manageinge of all such goods, wares and commodities which shall be brought into

or taken out of the severall magazines or store houses; the same treasurer or cape-merchant to continue in his office by the space of one whole year, next after his said election, unless he shall

happen to dye within the said year, or voluntarily give over the same or be removed for any just or reasonable cause; and that thereupon the same president & council, or the most part of them, shall have power and authority to elect him again or any other or others in his room or stead, to continue in the same office as aforesaid; and that alsoe there shall be two or more persons of good discretion within every of the said collonies and plantations elected and chosen yearly during the said terme of five years, by the president and council of the same

collony, or the most part of them respectively, within their several limits and precincts, the one or more of them to keep a book in which shall be registered and entred all such goods,

wares, and merchandizes, as shall be received into the several magazines or store houses within that collony, being appointed for that purpose,

Books. and the other to keep a like book, wherein shall be registered all goods, wares, and merchandizes which shall issue or be taken out of any the several magazines or store-houses of that collony, which clarks shall continue in their said places but att the will of the president and council of that collony, whereof he is or of the major part of them; and that every person or



every the said several colonies, and plantations shall be furnished with all necessaries out of those several magazines or store-houses which shall belong to the said colony and plantation, in which that person is, for and during the terme and time of five years, by the appointment, direction and order of the president and counsell there, or the said cape merchant and two clerks or of the most part of them, within the said several limits and preeincts of the said colonies and plantations; alsoe our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby ordain, that the adventurors of the said first colony and plantation, shall and may during the said terme of five years, elect and choose out of themselves one or more companions, each company consisting of three persons att the least who shall be resident att or neer London, or such other place, and places, as the counsell of the colony for the time being, or the most part of them during the said five years shall think fitt, who shall there from time to time take charge of the trade an accompt of all such goods, wares and merchandizes, and other things which shall be sent from thence to the company of the same colony, or plantation in Virginia, and likewise of all such wares, goods and merchandizes, as shall be brought from the said colony or plantation unto that place within our realme of England, and of all things concerning the manning of the affaires and profits concerning the

adventurors of that company which shall soe passe out of or come into that place or port: and likewise our will and pleasure is, that the adventurors in the said second colony and plantation shall and may during the said terme of five years elect out of themselves, one or more companies, each company consisting of three persons att the least, who shall be resident att, or neer Plymouth in our county of Devon, within our realme of England, and att such one, two, or three other places or ports, as the counsell of that colony, or the most part of them shall think fitt, who shall there, from time to time, take care and charge of the trade and account of all such goods, wares; merchandizes and other things, which shall be sent from thence from the same colony and plantation in Virginia, and likewise of all such goods, wares and merchandizes as shall be brought from the said colony and plantation in Virginia, into our realme of England, and of all things concerning the manning of the affaires and profits of the adventurors of that company; alsoe our will and pleasure is, that no person or persons shall be admitted into any of the said colonies and plantations there to abide and remaine, but such as shall take not only the usual oath of obedience to us, our heirs, and successors, but alsoe the oath which is limited in the last session of Parliament holden at Westminster

in the fourth year of our raigne, for their due obedience unto us our heirs and successors, that the trade to, and from any the colonies aforesaid may be managed to, and from such ports and places, within our realme of England, as is before in these articles intended, any thing set down heretofore to the contrary notwithstanding, and that the said President and Councell of each of the said colonies, and the more part of them respectively shall and may lawfully from time to time constitute, make and ordaine such constitutions, ordinances, and officers, for the better order, government and peace of the people of their several collonies, soe alwaies as the same ordinances, and constitutions doe not touch any party in life or member, which constitutions, and ordinances shall stand, and continue in full force, untill the same shall be otherwise altered, or made void, by us, our heirs, or successors, or our, or their counsell of Virginia, soe alwaies as the same alterations, be such as may stand with, and be in substance consonant unto the lawes of England, or the equity thereof; furthermore, our will, and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby determine and ordaine, that every person and persons being our subjects of every the said collonies and plantations shall from time to time well entreate those salvages in those parts, and use all good means to draw the salvages and heathen people of the said several places, and of the territories and countries adjoining to the true service and knowledge of God, and that all just, kind and charitable courses, shall be holden with such of them as shall conforme themselves to any good and sociable traffique and dealing with the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, which shall be planted there, whereby they may be the sooner drawne to the true knowledge of God, and the obedience of us, our heirs, and successors, under such severe paines and punishments, as shall be inflicted by the same several presidents, and counsell of the said several colonies, or the most part of them within their several limits and preeincts, on such as shall offend therein, or doe the contrary: and that as the said territories and countries of Virginia and America within the degrees aforesaid shall from time to time increase in plantation by our subjects, wee our heirs and successors will ordaine and give such order, and further in-

Magazines. }  
 which that person is, for and during the terme and time of five years, by the appointment, direction and order of the president and counsell there, or the said cape merchant and two clerks or of the most part of them, within the said several limits and preeincts of the said colonies and plantations; alsoe our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby ordain, that the adventurors of the said first colony and plantation, shall and may during the said terme of five years, elect and choose out of themselves one or more companions, each company consisting of three persons att the least who shall be resident att or neer London, or such other place, and places, as the counsell of the colony for the time being, or the most part of them during the said five years shall think fitt, who shall there from time to time take charge of the trade an accompt of all such goods, wares and merchandizes, and other things which shall be sent from thence to the company of the same colony, or plantation in Virginia, and likewise of all such wares, goods and merchandizes, as shall be brought from the said colony or plantation unto that place within our realme of England, and of all things concerning the manning of the affaires and profits concerning the

adventurors of that company which shall soe passe out of or come into that place or port: and likewise our will and pleasure is, that the adventurors in the said second colony and plantation shall and may during the said terme of five years elect out of themselves, one or more companies, each company consisting of three persons att the least, who shall be resident att, or neer Plymouth in our county of Devon, within our realme of England, and att such one, two, or three other places or ports, as the counsell of that colony, or the most part of them shall think fitt, who shall there, from time to time, take care and charge of the trade and account of all such goods, wares; merchandizes and other things, which shall be sent from thence from the same colony and plantation in Virginia, and likewise of all such goods, wares and merchandizes as shall be brought from the said colony and plantation in Virginia, into our realme of England, and of all things concerning the manning of the affaires and profits of the adventurors of that company; alsoe our will and pleasure is, that no person or persons shall be admitted into any of the said colonies and plantations there to abide and remaine, but such as shall take not only the usual oath of obedience to us, our heirs, and successors, but alsoe the oath which is limited in the last session of Parliament holden at Westminster

Colonists to take certain oaths.

in the fourth year of our raigne, for their due obedience unto us our heirs and successors, that the trade to, and from any the colonies aforesaid may be managed to, and from such ports and places, within our realme of England, as is before in these articles intended, any thing set down heretofore to the contrary notwithstanding, and that the said President and Councell of each of the said colonies, and the more part of them respectively shall and may lawfully from time to time constitute, make and ordaine such constitutions, ordinances, and officers, for the better order, government and peace of the people of their several collonies, soe alwaies as the same ordinances, and constitutions doe not touch any party in life or member, which constitutions, and ordinances shall stand, and continue in full force, untill the same shall be otherwise altered, or made void, by us, our heirs, or successors, or our, or their counsell of Virginia, soe alwaies as the same alterations, be such as may stand with, and be in substance consonant unto the lawes of England, or the equity thereof; furthermore, our will, and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby determine and ordaine, that every person and persons being our subjects of every the said collonies and plantations shall from time to time well entreate those salvages in those parts, and use all good means to draw the salvages and heathen people of the said several places, and of the territories and countries adjoining to the true service and knowledge of God, and that all just, kind and charitable courses, shall be holden with such of them as shall conforme themselves to any good and sociable traffique and dealing with the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, which shall be planted there, whereby they may be the sooner drawne to the true knowledge of God, and the obedience of us, our heirs, and successors, under such severe paines and punishments, as shall be inflicted by the same several presidents, and counsell of the said several colonies, or the most part of them within their several limits and preeincts, on such as shall offend therein, or doe the contrary: and that as the said territories and countries of Virginia and America within the degrees aforesaid shall from time to time increase in plantation by our subjects, wee our heirs and successors will ordaine and give such order, and further in-

President and Council.

respectively shall and may lawfully from time to time constitute, make and ordaine such constitutions, ordinances, and officers, for the better order, government and peace of the people of their several collonies, soe alwaies as the same ordinances, and constitutions doe not touch any party in life or member, which constitutions, and ordinances shall stand, and continue in full force, untill the same shall be otherwise altered, or made void, by us, our heirs, or successors, or our, or their counsell of Virginia, soe alwaies as the same alterations, be such as may stand with, and be in substance consonant unto the lawes of England, or the equity thereof; furthermore, our will, and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby determine and ordaine, that every person and persons being our subjects of every the said collonies and plantations shall from time to time well entreate those salvages in those parts, and use all good means to draw the salvages and heathen people of the said several places, and of the territories and countries adjoining to the true service and knowledge of God, and that all just, kind and charitable courses, shall be holden with such of them as shall conforme themselves to any good and sociable traffique and dealing with the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, which shall be planted there, whereby they may be the sooner drawne to the true knowledge of God, and the obedience of us, our heirs, and successors, under such severe paines and punishments, as shall be inflicted by the same several presidents, and counsell of the said several colonies, or the most part of them within their several limits and preeincts, on such as shall offend therein, or doe the contrary: and that as the said territories and countries of Virginia and America within the degrees aforesaid shall from time to time increase in plantation by our subjects, wee our heirs and successors will ordaine and give such order, and further in-

May pass ordinances, &c.

ordaine, that every person and persons being our subjects of every the said collonies and plantations shall from time to time well entreate those salvages in those parts, and use all good means to draw the salvages and heathen people of the said several places, and of the territories and countries adjoining to the true service and knowledge of God, and that all just, kind and charitable courses, shall be holden with such of them as shall conforme themselves to any good and sociable traffique and dealing with the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, which shall be planted there, whereby they may be the sooner drawne to the true knowledge of God, and the obedience of us, our heirs, and successors, under such severe paines and punishments, as shall be inflicted by the same several presidents, and counsell of the said several colonies, or the most part of them within their several limits and preeincts, on such as shall offend therein, or doe the contrary: and that as the said territories and countries of Virginia and America within the degrees aforesaid shall from time to time increase in plantation by our subjects, wee our heirs and successors will ordaine and give such order, and further in-

Must promote civilization among the Indians.

good and sociable traffique and dealing with the subjects of us, our heirs and successors, which shall be planted there, whereby they may be the sooner drawne to the true knowledge of God, and the obedience of us, our heirs, and successors, under such severe paines and punishments, as shall be inflicted by the same several presidents, and counsell of the said several colonies, or the most part of them within their several limits and preeincts, on such as shall offend therein, or doe the contrary: and that as the said territories and countries of Virginia and America within the degrees aforesaid shall from time to time increase in plantation by our subjects, wee our heirs and successors will ordaine and give such order, and further in-

Provision for further ordinances, &c.



structions, lawes, constitutions, and ordinances for the better order, rule and government of such, as soe shall make plantations there, as to us, our heires and successors, shall from time to time be thought fitt and convenient, which alwaies shall be such, as may stand with, or be in substance, consonant unto the lawes of England, or the equity thereof, and lastly wee doe ordaine, and establish for us, our heires and successors, that such oath shall be taken by each of our counsellors here for Virginia concerning their place and office of counsell, as by the privy counsell of us, our heires and successors of this our realme of England, shall be in that behalfe limited and take an oath. appointed; and that each counsellor of the said colonies shall take such oath, for the execution of their place and office of counsell, as by the council of us, our heires and successors here in England, for Virginia shall in that behalfe be limited and appointed, and as well those several articles and instructions herein mentioned and contained, as alsoe all such as by virtue hereof shall hereafter be made and ordained, shall as need shall require, by the advice of our council here for Virginia shall be transcribed over unto the said several counsellors of the said several colonies, under the seale to be ordained for our said counsell here for Virginia. In witnesse, &c.

March 9. 4<sup>th</sup> An Ordinance and Constitution enlarging the number of our  
James 1<sup>st</sup> Council for the two several Colonies and Plantations in Virginia  
and America, between thirty-four and forty-five degrees of north-  
erly latitude, and augmenting their authority, for the better directing and order-  
ing of such things as shall concerne the said Colony.

**Recital.** James, by the grace of God, &c. Whereas wee, by our letters patents, under our great seale of England, bearing date the tenth day of April last past, have given lycence to sundry our loving subjects, named in the said letters patents, and to their associates, to deduce and conduct two several colonies or plantations of sundry our loving people, willing to abide and inhabit in certain parts of Virginia and America, and divers prehemineneces, priviledges, authorities and other things as in and by the said letters patents more particularly it appeareth; and whereas wee, according to the effect and true meaning of the said letters patents, have, by a former instrument signed with our hand and signe manuel, and sealed with our privy seale of our realme of England, established and ordained, that our trusty and well-beloved Sir William Wade, Knight, our Lieutenant of our Tower of London, Sir Thomas Smith, Knight, Sir Walter Cope, Knight, Sir George More, Knight, Sir Francis Popham, Knight, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, Knight, Sir John Trevor, Knight, Sir Henry Montague, Knight, recorder of our city of London, Sir William Ronney, Knight, John Dodderidge, Esqr. our solicitor general, Thomas Warr, Esqr. John Eldred of our city of London, merchant, Thomas James of our city of Bristol, merchant, and James Bagge of Plymouth, in our county of Devon, merchant, should be our council for all matters which should happen in Virginia or any territories of America aforesaid, or any actions, businesse or causes for and concerning the same, which council is from time to time to be increased, altered, or changed att the nomination of us, our heires and successors, and att our and their will and pleasure; and whereas our said council have found by experience, their number being but fourteen in all, and most of them dispersed by reason of their several habitations far and remote the one from the other, and many of them in like manner far remote from our city of London, where, if need require, they may receive directions from us and our privy council, and from whence instructions and directions may be by them left and more readily given, for the said colonies, that when very needfull occasion requireth, there cannot be any competent number of them, by any meenes be drawne together for consultation; for remedy whereof our said loving subjects of the several colonies aforesaid, have been humble suitors unto us, and have to that purpose offered unto our royal consideration, the names of certaine sage and discreet persons, and having with the like humility entreated us, that the said persons or soe many of them, as to us should seem good, might be added unto them, and might (during our pleasure) be of our council for the foresaid colonies of Virginia, wee therefore, for the better establishing, disposing, ordering and directing of the said several colonies, within the degrees aforesaid, and of all such affaires, matters, and things, as shall touch and concerne the same, doe by these presents, signed with our hand and signe manuel, and seal-





ed with our privy seale of our realme of England, establish and ordaine, that

Additional Henry Nevil, Knight, Sir Fulks Grevil, Knight, Sir Jo'n Scot, councillors Knight, Sir Robert Mansfield, Knight, Sir Oliver Cromwell, nominated by Knight, Sir Morrice Berkeley, Knight, Sir Edward Michelbourne, the 1<sup>st</sup> Colony. Knight, Sir Thomas Holcroft, Knight Sir Thomas Smith, Knight,

Robert Croft, Knight, Sir George Kopping, Knight, Sir Edwyn Sandys, Knight, Sir Thomas Row, Knight, and Sir Anthony Palmer, Knight, nominated unto

By the 2<sup>d</sup> colony. us by and on the behalfe of the said first colony : Sir Edward

Hungerford, Knight, Sir Jo'n Mallet, Knight, Sir John Gilbert,

Knight, Sir Thomas Freake, Knight, Sir Richard Hawkings,

Knight, Sir Bartholomew Mitchel, Knight, Edward Seamour, Esqr,

Bernard Greenville, Esqr. Edward Rodgers, Esqr. and Matthew Sutcliffe, Doctor

of Divinity, nominated to us by and on the behalfe of the said second colony shall,

together with the persons formerly named, be our council for all matters, which

shall or may conduct to the aforesaid plantations, or which shall happen in Vir-

ginia or any the territories of America, between thirty-four and forty-five degrees

of northerly latitude from the equinoctial line, and the Islands to the several colo-

nyes limited and assigned. That is to say, the first colony, from thirty-four to for-

ty-one degrees of the said latitude, and the second colony between thirty-eight and

forty-five degrees of the said latitude: and our further will and pleasure, and by

these presents for us, our heires and successors, wee doe grant unto

Any 12 may our said council of Virginia, that they or any twelve of them att

act. the least for the time being whereof six att the least to be members

of one of the said colonies, and six more att the least to be mem-

bers of the other colony, shall have full power and authority, to ordaine, nomi-

nate, elect, and choose any other person, or persons at their discretion to be and

to serve as officer or officers, to all offices and places, that shall by them be thought

fit and requisite for the businesse and affaires of our said council, and concerning

the plantation or plantations aforesaid, and for the summoning, calling, and as-

sembling of the said council, together when need shall require, or for summoning

and calling before the said council, any of the adventurers, or oth-

Their power ers which shall passe on unto the said several colonies to inhabit or

time shall or may to trathck there or any other such like officer, or officers, which in

May change said [And the said council or any twelve of them as is aforesaid

their officers. shall have full power and authority from time to time to continue or

to alter or change the said officers and to elect and appoint others

in their roomes and places, to make and ordain acts and ordinances

for the better ordering disposing and marshalling of the said several colonies and

the several adventurers or persons going to inhabit in the same several colonies, or

of any provision or provisions for the same, or for the direction of the officers

aforesaid, or for the making of them to be subordinate or under jurisdiction one of

another, and to do and execute all and every of their act and things which by any

our grants or letters patents heretofore made they are warranted or authorised to

do or execute so as always none of the said acts and ordinances or other things

be contrary or repugnant to the true intent and meaning of our said letters

patents granted for the plantation of the said several colonies in Virginia and territo-

ries of America as aforesaid, or contrary to the laws and statutes in this our realme

of England, or in derogation of our prerogative royal. Witness ourself at West-

minster, the ninth day of March, in the year of our reign of England, France and

Ireland the fourth, and of Scotland the fortieth, &c.]

## APPENDIX J.

On page 81, reference is made to the grant of January 13, 1629, to William Bradford, for the benefit of the Plymouth Colony, establishing their territorial boundaries, and adding largely to their means of support, by the donation of the large and valuable tract on the Kennebec, extending fifteen miles on each side of that river, from the Collessee-Contee (Gardiner) to the Nequamkike (Waterville.) To show under what circumstances this Charter was given, and as evidence of the



estimation in which Sir Ferdinando Gorges was held by the Plymouth Company, we give below two letters from Governor Bradford to him, in 1627 and 1628, taken from Bradford's Letter Book, printed in the Massachusetts Historical Collections, 1st series, vol. III, pages 57 and 63. The letters, in connection with the subsequent grant, show how noble and generous was Gorges' conduct to this Plymouth Colony, and refutes the assertions subsequently made by Bradford, of his lack of friendship for them. The Plymouth Company at the outset, was made up of sincere and worthy people, but gradually assimilated toward the fierce characters that ruled the Colony of Massachusetts Bay.

## LETTER TO SIR FERDINANDO GORGES.

*Honorable Sir :*

My humble duty remembered ; we have of late received letters from the Dutch Plantation, and have had speech with some of them. I hold it my duty to acquaint your worship, and the rest of the Honorable Council, therewith, unto whom we have likewise writ, and sent, the copies of their letters, that together with their, and your honorable directions, we may know how to order ourselves herein. They have used trading there this six or seven and twenty years, but have begun to plant of later time, and now have reduced their trade to some order, and confined it only to their company, which heretofore was spoiled by their seamen and interlopers, as ours is this year most notoriously ; of whom we have made some complaint in our letters to the Council, not doubting but we shall find worshipful furtherance therein. We are now upon concluding with our adventurers, and shall be put upon hard straits by great payments which we are enforced to make for sundry years, or else to leave all, which will be to us very difficult : and, to say the truth, if these disorders of fishermen and interlopers be not remedied, no plantations are able to stand, but will decay, whereas otherwise they may subsist and flourish : Thus in all humbleness, I take leave, and rest

At your service,

WILLIAM BRADFORD.

Plymouth, June 15, Anno 1627.

P. S. Beside the spoiling of the trade this last year, our boat and men, had like to have been cut off by the Indians, after the fishermen were gone, for the wrongs which they did them, in stealing their skins, and other abuses offered them, both the last year and this : and besides, they still continue to truck pieces, powder and shot with them, which will be the overthrow of all, if it be not looked unto.

## TO SIR FERDINANDO GORGES.

*Honorable Sir :*

As you have ever been, not only a favorer, but also a most special beginner and furtherer of the good of this country, to your greatest and no less honor, we, whose names are underwritten, being some of every plantation in the land, deputed for the rest, do humbly crave your worship's help and best assistance, in the speedy, (if not too late,) redress of our almost desperate state and condition in this place, expecting daily to be overrun and spoiled by the savages, who are already abundantly furnished with pieces, powder and shot, swords, rapiers and javelins : all of which arms and munition is this year plentifully and publicly sold unto them by our own countrymen ; who under the pretence of fishing come a trading amongst them : yea, one of them (as your worship may further understand by our particular informations) hath for his part sold twenty or twenty-one pieces, and one hundred weight of powder, by which you may conceive of the rest. For we hear the savages have above sixty pieces amongst them : besides other arms : in a word, there is almost nothing vendible amongst them, but such munitions so they have spoiled the trade in all other things. And as vice is always fruitful, so from the greedy covetousness of the fishermen, and their evil example, the like hath begun to grow amongst some, who pretend themselves to be planters, though indeed they intend nothing less but to take opportunity of the time and provide themselves and begone, and leave others to quench the fire which they have kindled, of which number, Mr. Thomas Morton is one, being of late a dweller in the Massachusetts Bay, and the head of a turbulent and seditious crew, which he had gathered unto him, who dwelling in the midst of us, hath set up the like practice in these parts and hath sold sundry pieces to the natives, who can use them with great dexterity, excelling our English therein, and have been vaunting with them at Sowams, Narragansett and many other places, so as they are spread both North and South all the



land over to the great peril of all our lives. In the beginning of this mischief we sought friendly to dissuade him from it, but he scorned us therein, and prosecuted it the more; so as we were constrained for the safety of ourselves, our wives and innocent children, to apprehend him by force (though with some peril) and now have sent him to the Council of New England to receive according to his demerits, and be disposed of as their honors shall think fit, for the preventing of further mischief, the safety of our lives, and the terror of all other delinquents in the same kind. Now our hope and humble request is, that your Worship and those honorable of his Majesty's Council for New England will commiserate our case, tender our lives and pity our infants; and consider the great charges and expenses that we and our assistants and associates have been at, besides all the miseries and hardships that we have broken through in these beginnings which have hitherto happily succeeded for the planting of this country which is hopeful, if it be cherished and protected against the cankered covetousness of these licentious men; if not we must return and quit the country: Wherefore we beseech your Worship to afford us your favorable assistance and direction in bringing this man to his answer before those whom it may concern; and to credit our true informations sent by this bearer, lest by his audacious and colored pretences he deceive you which know not things as we do: As likewise that such fishermen may be called to account for their great abuses offered this year and the last, as many as have been known to offend in this case; and that your Worship for the time to come would be a means in what you may, that we may be strengthened with some authority or good order amongst ourselves for the redressing of the like abuses which may arise amongst us, till some general government be established in the land: Thus in hopeful assurance that your Worship will make a favorable construction of these our honest intendments and humble requests, we commend you to the protection of the Highest, and rest.

At your service, &c.

June 9, Anno 1628.

[This letter, Bradford says, was subscribed by some of the chief of every plantation, Plymouth, Naumkeag, (Salem,) Pascataquaek and Natascot.]

---

## APPENDIX K.

---

The 3d Edition of L'Escarbot's "*History of New France*," published in Paris, in 1618, contains an Address to the King, which we here re-produce in full, and which confirms the views maintained by the writer, as to the effect of the revocation of De Mont's Charter, on the destinies of the new world. That revocation according to L'Escarbot worked "*the ruin of a fine Enterprise, which promised the speedy establishment of a new kingdom.*"

---

TO THE VERY CHRISTIAN KING OF FRANCE AND OF NAVARRE, LOUIS XIII, DUKE OF MILAN, COUNT OF AST, LORD OF GENOA.

*Sire*.—There are two principal things which ordinarily incite Kings to make conquests: zeal for the glory of God, and the augmentation of their own. In this double subject, our Kings, your predecessors, have been for a long time invited to extend their dominion beyond the ocean, and to form new empires there, at little expense, by just and lawful ways. They have expended some sums, and are now expending, in different places. But after having discovered the country they have been satisfied with that and the French name is fallen into contempt, not through want of virtuous men who might carry it upon the wings of the loftiest winds, but by the plots, arts and practices of the enemies of your Crown, who have been able to govern the minds of those whom they have felt, were able to do something to forward such an affair. Meanwhile, the Spaniard, formerly weak, by our indifference, has rendered himself powerful in the East, and in the West, without our having had the honorable ambition, not to precede him, but to second him, not to second him, but to avenge the insults done by them to our French, who under the consent of our Kings, wished to have a share in the inheritance of those new and immense lands that God presented to the men of these





parts about twenty-six years ago. It was a thing worthy of the late King of glorious memory, your father, *Sire*, to reform these things; but having lofty designs for the welfare of the Christian republic he had left to your young years, these exercises and the establishment of a new kingdom in the new world: whilst on this side he would labor to reunite different religions, and bring to a good understanding the Christian Princes much prejudiced between themselves. Now the jealousy of his enemies having begrudged him this glory, and us, such a possession, it may be said, that the burden which you have taken of governing kingdoms which have fallen to you weighs upon you sufficiently without seeking occupations for pleasure, which are not necessary. But, *Sire*, I think on the contrary; that as the grand Alexander begun, almost at your age, the conquest of the first empire of the world, so extraordinary enterprises are very becoming to your Majesty, who for six months has given so many proofs of your prudence and of your courage, that the heavens have been charmed, and the earth so much astonished, that there is not any among men who does not admire, love and fear you to-day, nor deem you capable of governing not only what you possess, but all the universe.

This being so, *Sire*, and God so abundantly bestowed his favors upon you, they ought to be acknowledged by some action worthy of a very Christian King; which is to make Christians and to bring to the fold of Jesus Christ the people from beyond the sea, who are not yet subjected to any Prince; or, to efface from our books and from the memory of man, this name of *New France*, of which in vain we boast. *Sire*, you will not want good captains upon the spot, if you may please to help and sustain them and pay the expenses for those only who are willing to settle in the country. But, *Sire*, it is necessary to wish, and to command and not to allow that which has once been granted, should be revoked, as has been done heretofore, to the ruin of a fine enterprise which promised the speedy establishment of a new kingdom in those lands beyond, and the work would be well advanced to-day if the envy and the avarice of certain people who would not give a stroke of their sword for your service, had not prevented it. The late Lord de Poutreincourt, gentleman of immortal memory, burned with immutable desire (as he had well begun) the lands fallen to his share: and in that he has always been crossed; (as also his eldest son, who inhabited the country ten years ago,) having never found but very little support in a thing so lofty, so Christian, and which belongs only to Christian Hercules.

Lord de Mouts and de Razille make the same complaint in regard to them. I leave out the enterprises farther back in our memory, of the voyages of Jacques Quartier, Villegagnon and Laudonniere, to Canada, to Brazil and to Florida. What, then, *Sire*, shall the Spaniard boast that wherever the sun shines, from his rising to his setting, he shall command? and you, first King of the earth, eldest son of the Church, will not be able to say the same? What, have the old Greeks and Romans in their paganism, had the praise of having civilized many nations and sent great colonies, to that effect: and shall not we, born in the knowledge of the true God, and under a law wholly of charity, have the zeal not only to civilize, but to bring to the way of safety so many wandering people, capable of every thing good, who are beyond the ocean, without God, without law, without religion, living in pitiable ignorance? What, *Sire*, have the Kings, your great ancestors, exhausted the men and treasures of France, and exposed their lives to death, to keep religion among the people of the East, and shall not we have the same zeal to make Christians of those of the West, who have voluntarily given us their land, and extended their arms to us for a hundred years past? Can we find any available excuse before the throne of God, when they accuse us of the want of pity which we have had towards them, and attribute to us their failure to be converted? If we did not know the condition in which they are, we should be beyond reproach. But we see it, we touch it, we feel it, and we have no anxiety about it. If some new people come to us from Italy or from Spain, with a new garment or a new song, we go to meet them, we embrace them, we admire them, in a moment we make them overflow with riches. I do not blame this, *Sire*, since the bounty of Kings has no other bounds than their good pleasure, and since in your kingdom every one is master of his own property. But to my mind, they should pay as much attention to the work of which I speak, a work without a parallel which exceeds everything pious which can be conceived in the actions of men. One single confiscation, one single good benedice, one single sum of one hundred thousand crowns, counted and numbered (among several) since the death of the late King, your father, *Sire*, to a company who should only have to act in the matter, could supply that, and cause you to rule within the torrid zone, and beyond in the West. But every one wishes to draw to himself and so far from their representing that to you, on the contrary, results make us believe, that all means are tried to enervate and cause to lose courage, those who busy themselves in such generous actions; without taking care that to-day, your kingdom is at stake in such matters. And if we wait a century more, France will no longer be France but the prey of the stranger who undermines us every day: corrupts your allies, and makes himself powerful to our ruin in a new world, which will all belong to





him. And to dazzle us, treasures all made ready in those lands are demanded, as if the way to enter when you please was not open to your Majesty from one tropic to the other ; as if the glory and strength of Kings consisted in anything except the multitude of men ; and as if your ancient France had not noble treasures in its wheat, wine, cattle, cloth, wool, woad and other provisions which are native to it : which are also the treasures to hope for from your *New France*, more neighboring to us, which for so long a time, such as it is, supports with its fish all Europe, as much by sea as by land, and gives to Europe its skins from which our Newfoundlanders, and merchants draw good profit.

*Sire*, if there is a King in the world, who can, and ought to rule over the sea and the land, it is you who have innumerable men, part of whom are languishing for want of occupation. And were there only two or three kinds of people who abound in your kingdom, you would have much advantage, which would be no less powerful in making you feared at the extremities of the earth than the old Gauls who conquered Asia and Italy ; and there occupied the provinces called by their name ; and more recently still, our fathers, the first French who possessed the Rhine as much on the other side as on this. But you, (beside this,) have harbors for the East and the West under your command. In addition, wood for ships ; provisions, sails and cordage to freight them in such abundance that you furnish all the nations near your kingdom.

There are many other things to say on this subject, *Sire*, which I abstain, at this time, from representing to your Majesty, when you have considered the importance of the above, and will manifest that you wish seriously to hear what concerns the good of your service and the glory of God in those Western lands.

Thus may God deign to inspire you, *Sire*. Thus may God aid you, and strengthen your arm to re-enter your former inheritance, and to subdue your enemies. Thus may God help us, soon to see your greatness served and obeyed through all the earth. I shall deem myself honored in contributing to this all which ought, such a man as I am,

SIRE,

of your Majesty,  
a very humble, very obedient  
and very faithful subject,  
MARK L'ESCARBOT,  
of Vervin.

---

## APPENDIX L.

---

### EXPLANATION OF L'ESCARBOT'S MAP OF NEW FRANCE.

On page 21, reference is made to the Map of New France which accompanied the 1st Edition of L'Escarbot's great work, the *History of New France*, a *fac simile* of which Map is herewith given. This Map was reproduced in England in 1609, by *P. Erondelle*, whose work was a compilation from L'Escarbot's History, without awarding any credit, or making any reference to the original. The work of L'Escarbot has never been translated into English.

The information contained in this Map and the accompanying Catalogue of Explanations, will be valued and appreciated by all students of American History.

---

### TO THE READER.

My reader, not having been able to arrange well, in so little space, so many harbors, islands, capes, gulfs, or bays, straits and rivers, of which mention is made in the voyages which I have henceforward to represent to thee, in this third book, I have esteemed it better and more convenient, to indicate them by figures, having only burdened the map which I give thee, with the most famous names which may be in Newfoundland, and the great river of Canada.



## PLACES IN NEWFOUNDLAND.

1. *Cap de Bonne-veue*—First landing of Captain Jacques Quartier.
2. *Port de Sainte Catherine.*
3. *Ile aux Oiseaux.*—In this island there is such a quantity of birds that all the ships of France could load themselves with them without its being perceived; Captain Jacques Quartier said this, and I believe it, indeed, for I have almost seen the same thing.
4. *Golfe des Chateaux.*
5. *Port de Carpunt.*
6. *Cap Raze*, where there is a harbor, called *Rougnenst.*
7. *Cap and Port de Degrad.*
8. *Ile Sainte Catherine*, and there even the *Port des Chateaux.*
9. *Port des Gouttes.*
10. *Port des Balances.*
11. *Port de Blanc-sablon.*
12. *Ile de Brest.*
13. *Port des Ilettes.*
14. *Port de Brest.*
15. *Port Saint Antoine.*
16. *Port Saint Servain.*
17. *Fleuve Saint Jacques*, and *Port de Jaques Quartier.*
18. *Cap Tiennot.*
19. *Port Saint Nicholas.*
20. *Cap de Rabast.*
21. *Baye de Saint Laurent.*
22. *Ile Saint Guillaume.*
23. *Ile Sainte Marthe.*
24. *Ile Saint Germain.*
25. *Les Sept Iles.*
26. *Riviere* called *Chischedec*, where there is a great quantity of aquatic horses called Hippopotami.
27. *Ile de L'Assumption*, otherwise called *Anticosti*, which is about 30 leagues long, and is at the entrance of the great river of *Canada.*
28. *Detroit Saint Pierre.*

Having pointed out the places in Newfoundland which look towards the East, and those which are along the main land on the North, let us return to the said Newfoundland and go entirely round it. But we must know that there are two principal passages to enter the great gulf of *Canada.* Jacques Quartier, in his two voyages, went by the Northern passage. To-day, to avoid the ice and for the shortest way, several people take the Southern passage, through the Strait which is between Cape Breton and Cape de Raye. And this route having been followed by Champlain, the first land discovered on his voyage was

29. *Cap Sainte Marie.*
30. *Iles Saint Pierre.*
31. *Port du Saint Esprit.*
32. *Cap de Lorraine.*
33. *Cap Saint Paul.*
34. *Cap de Raye*, which I consider to be the *Cap pointu* of Jacques Quartier.
35. *Les Mons des Cabanes.*
36. *Cap double.*

Now let us pass to the other land towards Cap Saint Laurent, which I should willingly call the island of *Bacaillos*, that is to say, of codfish, (as Postel has very nearly marked,) to give it a proper name, although I may name thus all around the Golfe de *Canada*: for, as far as Gachepe, all the harbors are suitable for the fishery of the said fish, and also, even the harbors which are outside and look towards the South; such as the harbor of the English, of *Campseau*, and of *Savallet.* Now, beginning at the Strait between Cape de Raye and Cap Saint Laurent (which is 18 leagues broad) are found:

37. *Les Isles St. Paul.*
38. *Cap Saint Laurent.*
39. *Cap Saint Pierre.*
40. *Cap Dauphin.*
41. *Cap Saint Jean.*
42. *Cap Royal.*
43. *Golfe Saint Julien.*
44. *Passage*, or *Detroit* of the bay of *Campseau*, which separates the island of *Bacaillos* from the main land.

Since so many years, this Strait is scarcely known, and nevertheless, it serves very much to shorten the way (or at least will serve when New France is inhabited) to the great river of *Canada.* We saw it last year, being ourselves in the harbor of *Campseau* going to look for some stream to supply us with fresh water before our return. We found one little one which I marked near the end of the said



baye of *Campseau*, at which place I had great fishing of cod. Now, when I consider Jacques Quartier's route, in his first voyage, I find it so obscure, that nothing is more so, for want of having noticed this passage. For our sailors the oftenest use the names placed by the Savages, such as *Tadoussac*, *Anticosti*, *Gachepe*, *Tregate*, *Miramichis*, *Campseau*, *Kebec*, *Batiscan*, *Saguenay*, *Chitsheder*, *Montaune*, and others. In this obscurity I have thought that what he calls the *Iles Colombaires*, are the *Islands* called *Ramees*, which are several in number, as he had said in his speech that a tempest had carried them from Cap pointu to 37 leagues distance, for he had already passed from the Northern bend towards the South.

45. *Iles Colombaires* alias *Ramees*.

46. *Iles Margeaux*. There are three islands filled with these birds like a meadow with grass, as Jacques Quartier said.

47. *Ile de Brion*, where there are *Hippopotami*, or sea horses.

48. *Ile d'Alzey*.

From there it is said that they sailed 40 leagues and found

49. *Cap d'Orleans*.

50. *Fleuve des Barques*, which I take to be *Miramichis*.

51. *Cap des Sauvages*.

52. *Golfe Saint Laurent*, which I take to be *Tregate*.

53. *Cap d'Esperance*.

54. *Baye* or *Golfe de Chaleur*, at which it is hotter, Jacques Quartier says, than in Spain. In which I shall not voluntarily believe him, until another voyage has been made, as regards the climate. But it may be that accidentally it was very warm there when he was there, which was in the month of July.

55. *Cap du Pre*.

56. *Saint Martin*.

57. *Baye des Morues*.

58. *Cap Saint Louis*.

59. *Cap de Montmorency*.

60. *Gachepe*.

61. *Isle percee*.

62. *Ile de Bonaventure*.

Let us now enter the great river of *Canada* in which we shall find few harbors in the space of more than 350 leagues, for it is very full of rocks. At the bend of the South, *Gachepe* being passed, there is:

63. *Cap a L'Eveque*.

64. *Riviere de Montaune*.

65. *Les Heaux Saint Jean*, which I take to be *Le Pic*.

66. *Riviere des Iroquois*. At the bend of the North, after *Chitsheder*, placed above at number 27.

67. *Riviere Sainte Marguerite*.

68. *Port de Lesguemin*, where the *Basques* go to fish for whales.

69. *Port de Tadoussac*, at the mouth of the river of *Saguenay*, where is the greatest traffic in skins of all the country.

70. *Riviere de Saguenay*, at 109 leagues from the mouth of the river of *Canada*. This river is so hollow that the bottom is almost not to be found. Here the great river of *Canada* is only 7 leagues broad.

71. *Ile de Lievre*.

72. *Ile aux Condres*. These two islands were thus named by Jacques Quartier.

73. *Ile d'Orleans*, which Jacques Quartier named *Ile de Bacchus*, on account of the great quantity of vines which are there. Here the water of the great river is fresh, and the tide flows more than 40 leagues beyond.

74. *Kebec*. It is a Strait of the great river of *Canada*, which Jacques Quartier named *Achelaci*, where *Sire De Monts* made a fort, and a settlement of French. Near which place there is a stream which falls from a rock very high, and very straight.

75. *Port de Sainte Croix*, where Jacques Quartier wintered, and Champlain says that he did not pass beyond; but he is mistaken, and the remembrance of those who have done well ought to be kept.

76. *Riviere de Batiscan*.

77. *Ile Saint Eloy*.

78. *Riviere de Foir*, named by Champlain *Les Trois Rivières*.

79. *Hochelaga*, a city of the Savages, from whose name Jacques Quartier called the great river that we name *Canada*.

80. *Mont Royal*. Mountain near *Hochelaga*, from which the great river of *Canada* is seen till lost from sight beyond the *Grand Saut*.

81. *Saut* of the great river of *Canada*, which lasts a league, this river falling among the rocks below with a strange noise.

82. *La grande Riviere de Canada*, whose source is not known. More than 800 leagues of which are known, either from actual sight, or from the report of the Savages. I find in Jacques Quartier's second voyage, that it is 30 leagues broad at its entrance, and more than 200 fathoms deep. This river has been called *Hochelaga*, by the same Jacques Quartier, from the name of the people who, in his time, inhabited about this *Saut*.





The First Colonization of New-England.

---

# AN ADDRESS,

DELIVERED AT THE

ERECTION OF A MONUMENTAL STONE

IN THE

WALLS OF FORT POPHAM,

August 29th, 1862,

COMMEMORATIVE OF THE PLANTING OF THE POPHAM COLONY

ON THE

PENINSULA OF SABINO,

August 19th, O. S., 1607,

ESTABLISHING THE TITLE OF ENGLAND

TO

THE CONTINENT.

BY JOHN A. POOR.

NEW-YORK:

ANSON D. F. RANDOLPH, PUBLISHER AND BOOKSELLER,  
653 BROADWAY, COR. OF AMITY STREET.

1863.



63° 46'

60° 50'

# A MAP of the PENINSULA OF SABINO.

U.S. Coast Survey  
1863.

Scale 1/2 inch = 1 mile

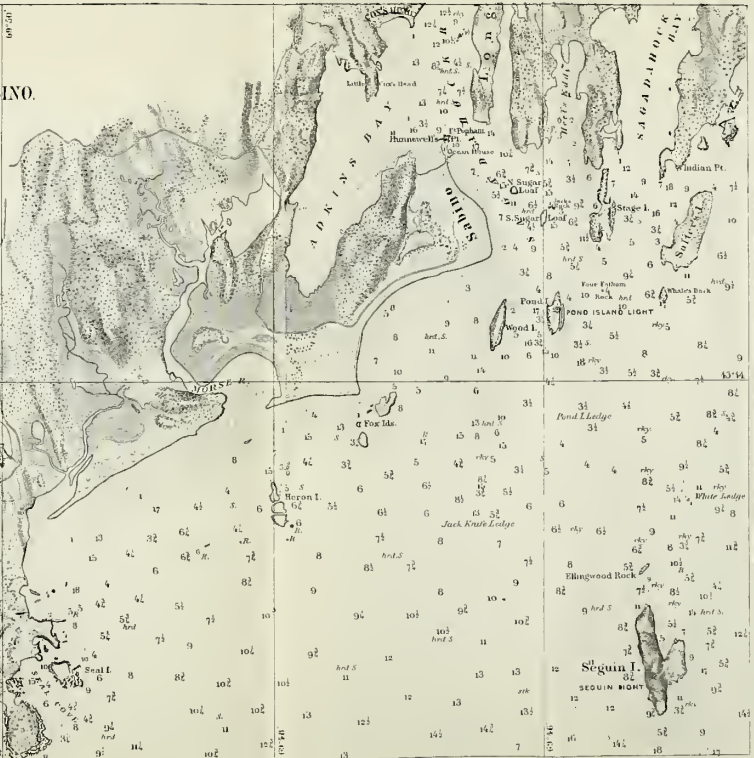
63° 34'

Wallace  
IslandGooseberry  
Island

Bald Head

Cape Small Pt.

63° 42'



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1863, by

**JOHN A. POOR,**

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the District of Maine.



## INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

---

THE Portland *Daily Advertiser* of August 30th, 1862, published the following :

### THE POPHAM CELEBRATION.

Friday, the 29th, was a most delightful day for celebrating the Two hundred and fifty-fifth Anniversary of the planting of Popham Colony on the Kennebec. Some five or six thousand people, coming from all parts of the country, assembled at Fort Popham on this occasion. In every respect the celebration was a great success.

Between eleven and twelve o'clock the ceremonies of commemoration, of erecting the Memorial Stone, commenced, Hon. Charles J. Gilman, of Brunswick, the Marshal of the day, reading the following brief statement :

"Two hundred and fifty-five years ago this day, under the auspices of a Royal charter granted by King James, there assembled on the Peninsula of Sabino, and near to this spot, a party of Englishmen, and formed the first civil Protestant government of the New World, and by formal occupation and possession, established the title of England to the continent. In the year 1607, in the month of August, on the 19th day of the month, the Commission of George Popham for the Presidency of the new Government was read. Capt. Raleigh Gilbert, James Davies, Richard Seymour, the preacher, Capt. Richard Davies, and Capt. Harlow, were all sworn assistants.

"In commemoration of this event, the Historical Society of this State, corresponding with citizens in different parts of the State, have instituted this celebration, and it is proposed from time to time, in the valley of the Sagadahoc, on the Peninsula of Sabino, to recall and to illustrate events of the past, and by this and future celebrations to assign to Maine her true historic position. On this spot, under the direction of the distinguished Chief of the Bureau of Engineers, and his accomplished assistants, a fort is in process of construction. In compliance with a petition of John





A. Poor and Reuel Williams, dated Washington, November 18th, 1861, Simon Cameron, then Secretary of War, by the advice of Gen. Totten, determined to associate this fort with the name of Popham and the history of his colony.

"In order that the record of events which have transpired may be made still more vivid and impressive, it has been thought fit and proper to insert in a wall of the fort a memorial stone. The President of the Historical Society, the President of Bowdoin College, the representative of the government of the State, the representative of the government of the United States, and the Grand Masonic Lodge of Maine, in the disposition and adjustment of this stone will participate. Before the commencement of these interesting exercises, let us imitate the example of those who stood here two hundred and fifty-five years ago this day. As the Rev. Richard Seymour, Chaplain of the Colony, was invited to perform acts of religious worship, *then*, so now do I invite Right Rev. Bishop Burgess, Bishop of the Diocese of Maine, to perform religious worship, according to the ceremonial of the Episcopal Church of that day."

Then followed the impressive services of the Episcopal Church, Right Rev. Bishop Burgess officiating, such religious services as the Popham colonists used, upon their first landing. A brief historical statement was next read by William Willis, President of the Maine Historical Society. President Woods, of Bowdoin College, Chairman of the Standing Committee of the Maine Historical Society, next solicited the consent of the State and of the United States to permit the erection of the Memorial Stone. Hon. Abner Coburn responded for the State, Capt. T. L. Casey, of the U.S. Engineers, for the United States. The erection of the Memorial Stone was then completed with Masonic ceremonies by the Grand Lodge of Maine, J. H. Drummond, Grand Master.

Following these ceremonies, which had been interspersed with appropriate music by Poppenburg's Band, of the 17th Regular Infantry, came the Oration by John A. Poor.

---

THE Address of Mr. Poor, as now published, contains the paragraphs which were omitted for want of time, at the Celebration.



## ADDRESS.

---

WE commemorate to-day the great event of American history. We are assembled on the spot that witnessed the first formal act of possession of New-England, by a British colony, under the authority of a Royal Charter. We have come here, on the two hundred and fifty-fifth anniversary of that event, to rejoice in the manifold blessings that have flowed to us from that act, — to place on record a testimonial of our appreciation of the value of that day's work, — and to transmit to future generations, an expression of our regard for the illustrious men who laid the foundation of England's title to the Continent, and gave a new direction to the history of the world.

We meet under circumstances of deep and peculiar interest. The waters of the same broad Sagadahoc,\* move onward in their majestic course to the ocean; the green summit of the beautiful Seguin still lifts itself in the distance — standing sentinel and breakwater to beat back the swelling surges of the sea; the flashing foam of the Atlantic still washes the rocky shores of the Peninsula of Sabino, and the secure anchorage of this open bay receives the tempest-tost bark, as on the day that the "Gift of God," the gallant flyboat of

\* Sagadahoc, or *Sachedahock*, is Indian, and signifies, "The going out of the waters" or the mouth of the river. *Fenton's Annals of Warren*, p. 15.



George Popham, helped into port Raleigh Gilbert's good ship "Mary and John," freighted with the hopes of a new empire. Behind us rises the green summit of yonder mount, around whose sides soon clustered the habitations of the intrepid Popham and his devoted companions; and the same rocky rampart that then encircled this proud bay, stands unmoved amid the changes of two hundred and fifty-five years. *All else is changed.* The white sails of many a gallant ship now cover this broad expanse of water; a towering light-house rises high above the summit of Seguin, throwing the rays of its Fresnel lens far out into the darkness, and along these rocky shores; habitations of men dot every point of the surrounding landscape, while the stout steamer, unlike the ship of olden time, *gladly* encounters the rude waves of the ocean.

"Against the wind, and against the tide,  
Still steady, with an upright keel." \*

But the heart of man has changed less than all, in these two hundred and fifty-five years. It still bows submissive to Almighty God, and lifts its voice in prayer and praise, as when in the solemn service of his ritual their pious preacher uttered these memorable words:

"At what time soever a sinner doth repent him of his sins from the bottom of his heart, I will blot all his wickedness out of my remembrance, saith the Lord."

"I will go to my Father, and say to him, Father, I have sinned against heaven and against thee: I am no more worthy to be called thy son." †

All this was permanent and enduring. The same duty and the same dependence upon God, as then, are upon us all. We seem to see before us the faithful

\* For description of the localities alluded to, see Note A, in the Appendix.

† King James's Library of 1604.





Richard Seymour,\* clad in the habiliments of the priesthood, as we hear the same accents of prayer and praise that he uttered,—when, before him knelt the faithful Popham and his hardy comrades, whose deep responses were borne upward to the mercy-seat. We listen to-day to the same strains of music, and to the same lessons, that first burst forth from human lips, on the shores of this great continent! That same sense of sinfulness that then found utterance in the language of the liturgy, finds expression in our hearts to-day; and may it please the Father of mercies so to mould all hearts, that these words of penitential confession shall find willing utterance from all lips, and these words of prayer and praise, raised in devout aspiration from all hearts, be continued from generation to generation through all time, till there shall be one fold and one Shepherd, and this mortal reach immortality at the final consummation of all things.

The greatness of an event is to be measured by the influence it exerts over the destinies of mankind. Acts of sublime moral grandeur, essential to the education of the race, may surpass in real magnitude the most brilliant achievements of material success, and the silent eloquence of truth, do more to conquer the fierce spirit of war, than the most imposing triumphs of war-like ambition. The ignominious execution of the Teacher of our Religion, in a remote and obscure province of the Roman Empire, was an event of so little interest at the time, as to be overlooked by the great writers of Roman history. The rise of the Christian sect in Judea, was noticed by the younger Pliny in his letter to the Emperor Trajan within the next hun-

\* Who was Richard Seymour? See sketch of him by Bishop Burgess, Appendix B.





dred years;\* but no human vision could then have foreseen, that their despised doctrines, would, within the next few hundred years, have become enthroned in the home of the Cæsars, and give law to the civilized world.

When Hannibal led his disciplined troops from the shores of Africa, through the perilous passes of the Pyrenees and across the Alps, into Italy, and slew more in number of the Roman youth, than the entire force of his army, we instinctively honor this sublime exhibition of martial genius and energy. When at last he failed to conquer Rome, only from the lack of succor from his own countrymen, whose jealousy of his success destroyed their country, we respect that indignant sense of justice that bequeathed his bones to a foreign resting-place, lest his unworthy countrymen should in after-times be honored, by the homage done to his remains. We weep at every fresh recital of the splendor of his achievements, and the magnitude of his misfortunes, however much we may value the superior civilization of the Roman people over that of the Carthaginians, as we reflect that the history of future times hung suspended, on the issue of that campaign. We are willing to rejoice, that at last his ungrateful nation was blotted from the earth, and Carthage lives only as a dishonor to history, while his name stands foremost, among warriors and heroes.

When the brave and accomplished Champlain returned to France after an absence of three and a half years in Acadia,† having explored all these shores, and given them the names they now bear, and placed the

\* Lib. x. Epistle 99, A.D. 107.

† Champlain, with De Monts and his associates, sailed from St. Malo March 17, 1604, in two ships. They returned to St. Malo September 28, 1607. See Poor's *Vindication of Gorges*, and the authorities there cited, p. 20, et seq.



symbols of the authority of his sovereign, from Cape Breton to Cape Cod, confidently anticipating the future greatness of his race and nation in this their secure home in the finest portion of the new world, he found that the charter granted to De Monts under which he held and occupied the country, had been revoked,\* and that the most hopeful plan of empire ever revealed to human eyes, had been marred if not destroyed. With generous valor he sought a new home amid the snows of the St. Lawrence, and in 1608 planted the flag and the power of France, upon the shores of that mighty river, where his bones now lie, in the midst of the race he there planted. But the folly of the great King Henry of Navarre, could not be overcome by any heroism on his part, for the stronger foothold of Sir Ferdinando Gorges had meanwhile been planted on the shores of this open sea, from Sagadahoc to Plymouth, and the flag of France was compelled to withdraw across the Sagadahoc, never more to return thither after 1607, and finally lay in the dust before that cross of St. George, which first floated from the rocky ramparts of Quebec on the 18th of September, 1759,† and the power of France was swept from the continent forever. But all hearts instinctively honor the immortal Champlain. The sympathy of all generous minds ever flows forth, at the utterance of his name. His monument still exists, in sight of an admiring posterity, more enduring than this stone we have this day raised in honor of another, and it shall forever remain in perpetual beauty, while the waters from the lofty summits of the Adirondac, mingling with those

\* Champlain's Voyages, p. 44, 45, 99, (ed. 1632.) L'Escarbot, p. 619, 2d edition, 1612.

† The battle was fought September 13, 1759; the surrender of Quebec was agreed on in the evening of the 17th, and the English flag raised, on the morning of the 18th.



of the Green Mountains, shall fill the deep recesses of the Lake, that bears the honored name, *Champlain*!\*

Our duty to-day calls us to honor another, and a greater than Champlain; not greater in purpose, but in the results he achieved for humanity and his race, and more entitled to our sympathy from the blessings we owe to his labors,—the man that gave North-America to his nation, and died without even the poor reward that followed his great rival.

That colossal empire which Champlain planted on the St. Lawrence, and watched over till the close of his life,† which eventually held four fifths of the continent, was unable to regain its possession on these Atlantic shores, and from this cause alone, it finally fell beneath the power and sagacity of England's greatest war minister, Pitt, who gave to the heroic Wolfe, in his youthful prime, the noblest opportunity for fame that has yet fallen to a leader of armies. But the hero who gave the continent to England, was neither Pitt nor Wolfe, but another and greater than either, the illustrious and sagacious Knight, whose manly daring and persevering energy, upheld the drooping cause of colonization in its darkest hours, against individual jealousy and Parliamentary injustice; and saw, like Israel's great law-giver, from the top of the mountain, the goodly land that his countrymen should afterwards possess, though he was not allowed to enter it.‡ All honor, this day, to Sir Ferdinando Gorges. His praise is proclaimed by Puritan voices, after more than two hundred years of unjust reproach. His monument

\* See Mrs. Sigourney's charming Sonnet to Champlain, in Note C of the Appendix.

† Champlain died in the discharge of the duties of the office of Governor-General of Canada, at Quebec, Dec. 25th, 1635.

‡ See Poor's Vindication of Gorges, p. 80, and note.





stands proudly erect among the nations, in that constitutional government of these United States which sheds blessings on the world.\* His name, once perpetuated in our annals, was stricken from the records of the State, and no city, or town, or lake, or river, allowed to bear it to future times. But a returning sense of justice marks the American character, and two hundred years after his death it is heard once more in honorable renown.† Busy hands, guided by consummate skill, are now shaping into beauty and order, a work of enduring strength and national defense, that does honor to his name; and rising in sight of our chief commercial city, more beautiful in situation than any that graces the *Ægean* coast, or smiles from the *Adriatic* shore—the metropolis, too, of his ancient “Province of Mayne”—proclaims, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, *Father of English colonization in America*.‡ And in after-times,

\* Gorges foresaw and predicted the independence of the colonies of North-America, of the British crown. Briefe Narration, p. 51, vol. ii. Maine Hist. Coll., also Poor's Vindication, p. 83.

† Gorges died in 1647. On the 6th of September, 1846, the Hon. George Folsom, of New-York, in an address before the Maine Historical Society, brought his claims to the public notice. See vol. ii. Maine Hist. Collections, p. 1.

‡ FORT GORGES.—The new Fort in Portland Harbor, erected by the United States Government, on Hog Island Ledge, has been named by the Secretary of War, FORT GORGES, in honor of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, “the original proprietor of the Province of Mayne and the Father of English Colonization in America.”

In November last a petition was presented to the Secretary of War, as follows, namely:

TO THE HON. JOHN B. FLOYD, SECRETARY OF WAR:

The undersigned, citizens of Maine, respectfully ask, that the new fort now being erected in Portland Harbor by the United States Government, may be named FORT GORGES, in honor of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, “the original proprietor of the Province of Mayne, and the Father of English Colonization in America.”

And as in duty bound will ever pray.

Wm. Willis,	Ether Shepley,	John A. Poor,	Jed'h Jewett,
John Mussey,	George Evans,	Ashur Ware,	Samuel Fessenden,
Samuel Jordan,	Geo. F. Emery,	Charles Q. Clapp,	Joshua Dunn,
N. Deering,	H. I. Robinson,	Samuel P. Shaw,	E. H. Elwell,
Wm. P. Preble,	P. Barnes,	Henry Willis,	Moses Macdonald,
Manasseh H. Smith,	John Neal,	Oliver Gerrish,	Jabez C. Woodman,
Geo. F. Shepley,	D. W. Fessenden,	A. W. H. Clapp,	Thomas H. Talbot,
F. A. Quinby,	Win. Senter,	John M. Adams,	Charles A. Lord,
			and others.

Similar petitions were presented from Augusta, and the same were transmitted through Capt. Kurtz, of the Engineer Corps, in charge of the construction of the Fort.



when his race shall become not only masters of the continent, but of the earth, and his mother tongue the universal language, History shall perpetuate the deeds of his genius, and Song shall 'make his name immortal.\*

The question that the European nations were called upon to solve, at the commencement of the seventeenth century, was, who should hereafter occupy and possess, the broad belt of the temperate zone of the New World, from the Atlantic to the Pacific seas. All previous explorations were preliminary efforts towards this one great object, but the question remained open and undecided. The voyages of the Northmen to these shores, interesting to the curious, are of no historic value, because not connected with the colonization of the country—unless it shall hereafter appear that Columbus obtained from them information, as to the extent of the Western Ocean. At the time of discovery by Columbus, the only races inhabiting the New World, north of Mexico, were tribes of wandering savages, incapable of accepting or acquiring habits of civilized life. An extinct race, had left their mounds in the West, and their deposits of oyster-beds along the shores of the Atlantic, and passed from traditionary story.

The adventurous Magellan in 1520 proved, by the *first* voyage round the world, the extent of the new continent, and in 1579, Sir Francis Drake, the first Englishman that circumnavigated the globe, in that daring

The Hon. John Appleton, Assistant Secretary of State, interested himself in the matter, and has forwarded us for publication the following note :

WASHINGTON, April 2d, 1860.

VERY DEAR SIR: I am much obliged for your note of this date.

You may say to your correspondent in Maine, that the Secretary of War has ordered the fortification he refers to to be named "Fort Gorges."

Yours, very truly,

W. R. DRINKARD.

Hon. JOHN APPLETON, Asst. Sec'y of State.

—*Portland Advertiser* of April 10th, 1860.

\* See in Note C, in Appendix, Mrs. Sigourney's admirable Poem on Gorges.



voyage which excited the admiration of his countrymen, gave the name of New-England to the Pacific shores of the continent, which name Captain John Smith afterwards, to strengthen the title to the country, affixed to the Atlantic slope.\* But till the beginning of the seventeenth century, North-America, north of Florida, remained unpeopled by Europeans. The Spaniards, the Portuguese, the French, the Dutch, and the English, had all made voyages of discovery, and laid claims to the country. As early as 1542, it was parceled off to the three powers first named; Florida, belonging to Spain, extending as far north as the thirty-third parallel of latitude; Verrazzan, or New-France, from the thirty-third to the fiftieth parallel; and Terra Corterealis, northward to the Polar Ocean, thus named in honor of Gaspar Cortereal, a Portuguese, who explored the coast in the year 1500. The Spaniards were in pursuit of mines of gold and silver, the Portuguese in quest of slaves, and the French with hopes of profit in the fur trade, and crude but indefinite ideas of colonization.

Spain and Portugal originally claimed the New World by grant from the Pope.† England, practically abandoning all claim from the discoveries of Cabot on the Atlantic, and Drake on the Pacific coasts, laid down, in 1580, the broad doctrine, that prescription without occupation was of no avail; that possession of the country was essential to the maintenance of title. *Prescriptio sine possessione, haud valeat.*‡

Before this time, the attention of England had been turned to the northern parts of America, with a view to colonization. As early as March 22, 1574, the Queen

\* John Smith's Description of New England, vol. ii. p. 2, Force's Tracts. Mass. Historical Coll. 3d series, vol. vi. p. 101.

† Bull of Pope Alexander VI. 1493.

‡ Camden's Eliz. Annales, 1580. See Poor's Vindication of Gorges, p. 9.





had been petitioned to allow of the *discovery* of lands in America "*fatally reserved to England, and for the honor of Her Majesty.*"\* Sir Humphrey Gilbert's charter "for planting our people in America," was granted by Elizabeth, June 11, 1578, and in 1580 John Walker and his companions had discovered a silver mine in Norumbega. The explorations of Andrew Thevett, of John Barros, and John Walker, alluded to in the papers recently discovered in the British State Paper Office, under date of 1580, we find nowhere else recorded. The possession of Newfoundland by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, was abandoned on his loss at sea, and it was not till 1584, that the first charter to Sir Walter Raleigh was issued, by Elizabeth. Raleigh named the country VIRGINIA, in honor of his Queen. Of the two colonies sent out by him, one returned, the other perished in the country, leaving no trace of its history and no record of its melancholy fate.† Thus, at the period of Elizabeth's death, in 1603, England had not a colonial possession on the globe.

Sir Richard Whitbourne had made voyages to Newfoundland in his own ship in 1588,‡ and in 1600 there was a proposition to the Queen for planting a colony in *the North-west of America*,§ in which can be unmistakably traced the agency of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, who it now appears was also concerned in the voyage of Gosnold in 1602, of Pring in 1603, and of George Weymouth in 1605, the earliest ones of which we have any authentic record.¶ That eloquent passage in Gorges' *Briefve Narration*, in which he gives "the reasons and

\* Calendar of Colonial State Papers, edited by Sainsbury, vol. i. page 1.

† Bancroft's History, vol. i. pp. 102, 107.

‡ Calendar of Col. State Papers, vol. i p. 82.

§ See this paper in full in Poor's Vindication of Gorges. Appendix.

¶ See Gorges' letter to Challons. Poor's Vindication, p. 24.





the means of renewing the undertaking of Plantations in America," deserves our highest praise; and it excites feelings of the warmest gratitude toward him, for it is a modest and touching statement, of his own heroic efforts, in the cause of American colonization.\*

But the Hollanders and the French were equally aroused to the importance, and inflamed with the purpose, of seizing upon these shores. The vast wealth of the Dutch, their great commercial success prior to this time in both the East and West-Indies, gave them the advantage. Champlain, with greater knowledge of North-America than any of his rivals, had accompanied Pont Gravè to the St. Lawrence, by direction of the King, in 1603, when, on his return to France, he found Acadia granted to De Monts, a Protestant, and a member of the King's household, under date of November eighth, 1603, extending across the continent, between the fortieth and forty-sixth degrees of north latitude.†

In the spring of 1604, De Monts, accompanied by Champlain, Pont Gravè, Poutrincourt, and the learned and accomplished historian L'Escarbot, sailed from Dieppe for the occupation of the New World. They planted their colony at St. Croix, within the limits of our own State, in 1604,‡ and in the spring and summer of 1605, explored the coast under the lead of Champlain, from Campseau to Cape Malabar, twelve miles south of Cape Cod, "searching to the bottom of the bays," the same year that Weymouth explored this most excellent and beneficial river of Sagadahoc. To make sure of the country, Champlain, Champdore and L'Escarbot remained three and a half years, fishing, trading with the natives, and occupying at Boston, Pis-

\* Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 16.

† L'Escarbot, p. 432, 2d edition. 1612.

‡ See Poor's Vindication of Gorges, p. 23, note.



cadouet, (Piscataqua,) Marchin, (Portland,) Koskebee, (Casco Bay,) Kinnibequi, (Kennebec,) Pentagoet, (Penobscot,) and all east, to Campseau and Cape Breton. Returning to France in 1607, they found the charter of De Monts revoked,\* on account of the jealousy of his rivals, and a small indemnity from the King their only reward, for these four years of sacrifice and unremitting toil. This shortsightedness of the great Henry of Navarre, cost France the dominion of the New World. For on the return of Weymouth to Plymouth, in 1605, with five savages from Pemaquid, Sir Ferdinando Gorges gathered from them full particulars of this whole region, its harbors, rivers, natural characteristics and features, its people and mode of government.†

Associating with himself the Earl of Southampton,‡ Gorges, relying upon these circumstances as a means of inflaming the imagination of his countrymen, petitioned the King for a charter,§ which he obtained, under date of April tenth, 1606,|| granting to George Popham, and seven others, the continent of North-America, from the thirty-fourth to the forty-fifth degrees of north latitude, extending one hundred miles into the mainland, and including all islands of the sea within one hundred miles of the shore. This charter is the basis on which rests the title of our race to the New World. It provided for a local government at home, intrusted to a

\* L'Escarbot, p. 460, 2d edition. 1612. Champlain, pp. 44, 45, 99.

† Gorges' Briefe Narration. Maine Hist. Coll. vol. ii. p. 19.

‡ Henry Wriothesley, Earl of Southampton, the friend and patron of Shakespeare, was the third earl of that name, and grandson of Thomas Wriothesley, Lord High Chancellor of England, under Edward VI. Created a peer February sixteenth, 1547, he died in 1550. His son Henry, was Lord Treasurer, and grandfather of Lady Rachel Russell. His patent of nobility was declared forfeited, under Elizabeth, but restored by James in 1603. The third earl, Treasurer of the Virginia Company, and the patron of letters and of American colonization, died in command of an English regiment, in the Dutch service, in the Netherlands, in 1624. The fourth earl died in 1667, and the title became extinct.

§ Strachey's Travaile into Virginia, p. 161.

|| See this charter in full in Poor's Vindication of Gorges. Appendix.



Council of Thirteen, with two companies, one of North, and the other of South-Virginia, for carrying into execution the plans of colonization in the country.\* The venerable Sir John Popham,† Chief-Justice of England by the appointment of Elizabeth, a man of vast wealth and influence, became the patron of the Company; and his son, Sir Francis Popham, was appointed by the King, with Sir Ferdinando Gorges, one of the Council of Thirteen, under whom, as the Council of Virginia, the work of colonization was to be carried forward.‡ From the great fame of Chief-Justice Popham, and his interest in the matter, the colony sent by the North-Virginia Company was popularly known as Popham's Colony, though his name was not in the charter, or included among the Council. "The planting of New-England in the North, was by Chief-Justice POPHAM," said the Scotch adventurers, in their address to the King, September ninth, 1630, recently brought to our notice from the British State Paper Office.§ In a work entitled, *Encouragement to Colonies*, by William Alexander, Knight, in 1625, he says: "Sir John Popham

\* The COUNCIL OF VIRGINIA, appointed by King James, November twentieth, 1606, consisted of *fourteen* persons instead of thirteen. Their names are given in a subsequent note.

† Sir John Popham was born at Huntsworth, near Wellington, in Somersetshire, in 1531. He was at Oxford in 1547, became distinguished at the bar in 1560; was made Sergeant at Law, and Solicitor General, June twenty-sixth, 1579. He was Speaker of the Commons in 1581; became Attorney-General June first, 1581. He was knighted 1592; made Chief-Justice of the Queen's Bench June eighth, 1592. He assisted at King James's coronation in 1603. September fifth and sixth, 1604, King James and the Queen were entertained at Littlecote, the residence of the Chief-Justice. He was the richest lawyer of his time, having an income of ten thousand pounds per year. He died June first, 1607, and was buried at Wellington.

His eldest son was Sir Francis Popham, whose eldest son, John Popham, married June twenty-first, 1621, Mary, only daughter of Sebastian Harvey, at Stoke Newington, but had no children. The family of the Chief-Justice is supposed to be extinct.

The fact of his appointment as Chief-Justice by Elizabeth, in the later years of her life, proves him to have been a great lawyer. Elizabeth appointed the ablest men she could find to public office.

‡ See this charter in full in Poor's Vindication. Appendix.

§ This paper is now printed for the first time in the appendix to Poor's Vindication of Gorges.







sent the first colony that went, of purpose to inhabit there near to Sagadahoc.”\* But until the comparatively recent publication of Strachey, the history of this colony was almost unknown. Two unsuccessful attempts at planting a colony were made in 1606.†

On the thirty-first of May, 1607, the first colony to New-England sailed from Plymouth for the Sagadahoc, in two ships—one called the “Gift of God,” whereof George Popham, brother of the Chief-Justice,‡ was commander; and the other, the “Mary and John,” commanded by Raleigh Gilbert—on board which ships were one hundred and twenty persons, for planters. They came to anchor under an island, supposed to be Monhegan, the thirty-first of July. After exploring the coast and islands, on Sunday, the ninth of August, 1607, they landed on an island they called St. George, where they heard a sermon, delivered unto them by Mr. Seymour, their preacher, and so returned aboard again. On the fifteenth of August they anchored under Seguin, and on that day the “Gift of God” got into the river of Sagadahoc. On the sixteenth, after a severe storm, both ships got safely in, and came to anchor. On the seventeenth, in two boats, they sailed up the river—Captain Popham in his pinnace, with thirty persons, and Captain Gilbert in his long-boat, with eighteen persons, and “found it a very gallant river; many good islands therein, and many branches of other small rivers falling into it,” and returned. On the “eighteenth, they all went ashore, and there made choice of a place for their plantation, at the mouth or entry of the river, on

\* A copy of this rare work is in the possession of Gen. Peter Force, of Washington City.

† See Poor's Vindication, pp. 38, 39.

‡ Note by R. H. Major, editor of Strachey's *Travels into Virginia*, p. 27. Published by the Hakluyt Society—one of the volumes of its series. Hubbard's History of Massachusetts Bay, p. 10.



the west side, (for the river bendeth itself towards the nor-east and by east,) being almost an island, of good bigness, in a province called by the Indians, 'Sabino'—so called of a Sagamo, or chief commander, under the grand bashaba." On the nineteenth, they all went ashore where they had made choice of their plantation, and where they had a sermon delivered unto them by their preacher, and after the sermon, the President's commission was read, with the patent,\* and the laws to be observed and kept.†

\* By the original charter, the company had the right to sell lands, work mines, coin money, transport thither colonists, expel by force all intruders, raise a revenue by imposts, carry out goods free of duty to the Crown, for seven years, with a denization of all persons born or residing in the country.

† A constituent code of laws was prepared, and signed by King James, in accordance with the provision to this effect set forth in the seventh section of the charter of April tenth, 1606. *Lucas's Charters of the Old English Colonies*, p. 4.

This constituent code is contained in two ordinances, or articles of instructions, from the King, namely:

I. Ordinance dated November twentieth, 1606, appointing

Sir William Wade,	Thomas Warr, Esq.,	Sir Henry Montague,
Sir Walter Cope,	Thomas James, Esq.,	John Doddridge, Esq.,
Sir Francis Popham,	Sir Ferdinando Gorges,	John Eldred, Esq.,
Sir John Trevor,	Sir George More,	James Bagg, Esq.,
Sir William Rowney,	Sir Thomas Smith,	

as the Council of Virginia.

This ordinance provided that

1. Each colony may elect associates, and annually elect a President for one year; and assistants or councillors for the same time.
  2. The Christian religion shall be preached and observed as established in the realm of England.
  3. Lands shall descend to heirs as provided by law in England.
  4. Trial by jury of twelve men, in all criminal cases. Tumults, rebellion, conspiracy, mutiny and sedition, murder, manslaughter, incest, rape and adultery, only, are capital offences.
  5. In civil causes, the President and Council shall determine. They may punish excesses in drunkenness, vagrancy, etc.
  6. All produce, or goods imported, to be stored in the magazine of the Company.
  7. They shall elect a clerk and treasurer, or cape-merchant.
  8. May make laws needful and proper, *consonant with the laws of England*
  9. Indians to be civilized and taught the Christian religion.
  10. All offenders to be tried in the colony.
  11. Oath of obedience to be taken.
  12. Records of all proceedings and judgments fully set forth and preserved, implying a right of appeal. In all criminal cases, magistrates to suspend sentence till opportunity of pardon is had by the king.
- These were the laws "to be observed and kept."  
(See Poor's Vindication of Gorges. Appendix.)

II. Ordinance, dated March 9th, 1607.

On the recommendation, or nomination, of the *Southern* company, the following additional members of the Council of Virginia were appointed, namely:



"George Popham; gent., was nominated President. Captain Raleigh Gilbert, James Davies, Richard Seymour, Preacher, Captain Richard Davies, Captain Harlowe, were all sworn assistants; and so they returned back again."\*

Thus commenced the first occupation and settlement of New-England.

On a careful examination of this patent of King James, and of the articles, instructions and orders by him set down for the government of these colonies, we are struck with the sagacity and statesmanship every where evinced by the monarch. He rose superior to the notions of his times, reduced the number of capital offences to ten, and declared none should be capital but the more gross of political, and the more heinous of moral crimes. He gave them all the liberties they could desire.

In the subsequent charters for Virginia and New-England, the same broad principles of self-government were in the main reenacted.

In the contests with the King and Parliament of England, one hundred and fifty years later, the colo-

Sir Thomas Challoner, Kt.,	Sir George Kopping, Kt.,	Sir Edw'd Michilbourne, Kt.,
Sir Henry Nevil, Kt.,	Sir Thomas Rowe, Kt.,	Sir Thomas Smith, Kt.,
Sir Robert Mansfield, Kt.,	Sir Fulke Grevil, Kt.,	Sir Robert Croft, Kt.,
Sir Maurice Berkeley, Kt.,	Sir John Scott, Kt.,	Sir Edward Sandys, Kt.,
Sir Thomas Holcroft, Kt.,	Sir Oliver Cromwell, Kt.,	Sir Anthony Palmer.
Sir Robert Kelligrew, Kt.,		

On the recommendation or nomination of the *Northern* Colony, the following additional members of the Council of Virginia were appointed:

Sir Edw'd Hungerford, Kt.,	Sir Richard Hawkins, Kt.,	Bernard Greenville, Esq.,
Sir John Mallett, Kt.,	Sir Bartholomew Mitchell, Kt.,	Edward Rogers, Esq.,
Sir John Gilbert, Kt.,*	Edward Seamour, Esq.,	Rev. Matthew Sutcliff, D.D.
Sir Thomas Freake, Kt.,		

These appointments made the Council of Virginia to consist of forty instead of thirteen. There was a further provision that "any twelve of them, at least for the time being, whereof six at least to be members of one of the said colonies, and six more at least to be members of the other colony," "shall have power to choose officers, call meetings," etc. (See *Poor's Vindication of Gorges*. Appendix.)

\* Strachey, p. 301, *Maine Hist. Coll.* vol. iii.





nists only demanded their *ancient rights*, as subjects of the British crown. From August 19, O. S., 1607, the title of England to the new world was maintained. At this place they opened a friendly trade with the natives, put up houses and built a small vessel, during the autumn and winter.

Richard Bloome, in his *History of the Present State of the Territories in America*, printed in London 1687, says:

"In the year 1607, Sir John Popham and others settled a plantation at the mouth of the river Sagadahoc. But Capt. James Davis chose a small place, almost an Island, to sit down in, when, having heard a sermon, read the patent and laws; and after he had built a fort, sailed further up the river. They call the fort St. George, Capt. George Popham being President; and the people (savages) seemed to be much affected with our men's devotion, and would say King James is a good King, and his God a good God; but our God, *Tanto*, is a naughty God.

"In January, in the space of seven hours, they had thunder, lightning, rain, frost and snow all in very great abundance."

On the 5th of February, 1608, George Popham died,\* and his remains were deposited within the wall of his fort, which was named Fort St. George.

It is well known that the Popham Colony, or a portion of them, returned to England in 1608, with the ship they had built on this peninsula, the first specimen of naval architecture constructed on this continent, named the "Virginia of Sagadahoc."

But this possession of the Popham Colony proved

\* Prince's New-England Chronology, p. 118; Brodhead's History of New-York, p. 14.





sufficient to establish the title. The revocation of the charter to De Monts gave priority to the grant of King James, covering the same territory, and this formal act of possession was ever after upheld, by an assertion of the title by Gorges. It was sufficient, effectually, to hold the country against the French and Spaniards alike.\* When Argall, in 1613, destroyed the French settlement at Mount Desert,† the French Minister demanded satisfaction at the hands of the British nation.‡ But no notice was taken of this

\* The Spanish Secretary of State in 1612 and 1613 complained to King James for allowing his subjects to plant in Virginia and Bermuda, as the country belonged to Spain, by the conquest of Castile who acquired it by the discovery of Columbus, and the Pope's donation; to which Sir Dudley Carleton, Secretary of State, by order of King James made answer: "Spain has no *possessions* north of Florida. They belong to the crown of England by right of discovery and actual possession by the two English colonies thither deducted, whereof the latter is yet there remaining. These countries should not be given over to the Spanish."

Cal. of Col. State Papers, vol. i. p. 14, Nos. 28 and 29; also page 16, Nos. 31 and 32.

In the memorials of the English and French Commission concerning the limits of Nova-Scotia or Acadia, under the Treaty of Utrecht, the French Commissioners say: "The Court of France adjudged that they had the right to extend the western limits of Acadia as far as the River Kinnibequi," (p. 39.) On page 98 of the same Collections it says: "Chief-Justice Popham planted the colony at Sagadahoc."

† MOUNT DESERT was so named by Champlain in 1605. The English named it Mount *Mansell*, in honor of Sir Robert Mansell, the highest naval officer of England, one of the grantees of the Virginia Company of 1609, and of the New-England Company in 1620. But it has retained the name of *Mount Desert*. It has always been celebrated for the excellence of its harbor and the boldness of its shores. It is the most celebrated locality on the Atlantic coast, and one of the three great harbors of the continent. The French Jesuits, who settled there in 1613, called it St. Saviour. Their precise place of settlement is described in the Relations of the Jesuits, vol. i. p. 44, 46, and has been identified by the accurate explorations of the Hon. E. L. Hamlin, of Bangor, the present year. In Poor's Vindication of Gorges, Appendix, page 103, is a translation of the Jesuit Relation, describing this place, and of its destruction by Argall.

What is of still more interest is the fact that this was the easternmost limits of *Marosheen*, or of the English discoveries up to 1609. See Purchase, vol. iv. p. 1873. L'Escarbot, the historian of New-France and of De Monts' expedition, says the Sagamo *Marchin* was residing at their next place west of Kinnibequi, and they named the place *Marchin*, (Portland,) in honor of him. Marchin was slain in 1607, and Bessabes was chosen captain in his place. Bessabes was slain also, and then *Asticou* was chosen in his stead. According to the statement in Purchase, vol. iv. p. 1873-4, at the easternmost part of Marosheen, at the river of Quibiquesson, dwelt *Asticou*. In 1613, *Asticou* was dwelling at Mount Desert, and the assurance given by his followers to Fathers Biard and Masse of his being sick and desirous of baptism at their hands, led them to go thither, and finally to yield to entreaties for making their settlement there, instead of at Kadesquit, (Kenduskeag,) Bangor, on the Penobscot, as they had agreed in 1611. It would seem from these facts that the authority of *Asticou* extended from Mount Desert to the Saco, the river of the Sagamo Olmouchin.

‡ Calendar of Colonial State Papers, vol. i. p. 15.



demand, because the French could show no claim of title. Again in 1624, M. Tillieres, the French Ambassador, claimed the territory of New-England as a portion of New-France, and proposed to yield all claim to Virginia, and the country as far south as the Gulf of Mexico; overlooking entirely the title of Spain to Florida, which had always been recognized as extending to the thirty-third parallel of north latitude. France had at this time become aware of the importance of securing the title and possession of these shores.\* King James called on Sir Ferdinando Gorges to prepare a reply to the claims of the French monarch. "Whereunto," says Gorges, "I made so full a reply (as it seems) there was no more heard of their claim."† From the abstract of this reply, recently printed in the Calendar of British State Papers, it would seem that no notice was taken of the Leyden flock, who were then at Plymouth; but Sir Ferdinando Gorges based the claim of his government on the ground of the charter of 1606, and the formal occupation of the country under it, with a continued claim of title.

In 1631, Champlain, the greatest mind of his nation, ever engaged in colonial enterprise, the boldest and most wary of all his countrymen, second only to Gorges in the results he achieved,—in his memoir to his sovereign, as to the title of the two nations, says: "King James issued his charter twenty-four years ago, for the country from the thirty-third to the forty-fifth degree. England seized the coast of New-France, where lies Acadia, on which they imposed the name of New-England."‡

The Dutch West-India Company, in their address

\* Cal. of Col. State Papers, vol. i. p. 60.

† Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 40.

‡ Doc. Hist. of New-York, vol. ix. p. 112.



to the States General, 1632, say: "In the year 1606, his Majesty of Great Britain granted to his subjects, under the names of New-England and Virginia, north and south of the river, (Manhattoes,) on express condition that the companies should remain one hundred miles apart. Whereupon the English began, about the year 1607, to settle by the river of Sagadahoc. The English place New-England between the forty-first and forty-fifth degrees of north latitude." \*

In Garneau's *History of Canada*, speaking of the destruction of Mount Desert, and Port Royal, in 1613, he says: "England claimed the territory to the forty-fifth degree of north latitude." This was seven years before the date of the New-England Charter. This claim was founded on possession; for England stoutly maintained, from the time of Elizabeth onward, that without possession there was no valid title to a newly discovered country.

This view of history is overlooked by Puritan writers, and those who follow their authority. That protection of the British nation which enabled the Puritans of Massachusetts Bay, and the humble followers of Robinson, to establish, unmolested, homes in the New World, under organized forms of government, was grudgingly acknowledged by them, and the man who secured to them these blessings, and watched over them with the same jealous care as of his own colony — they always stigmatized as their great enemy, † because, among other acts of humanity, he allowed the mild and conscientious men, who could not yield implicit obedience to their fierce doctrines, and more barbarous laws, ‡ to escape into Maine, and there remain

\* Holland Doc. N. Y., p. 61.

† Winthrop, vol. ii. p. 14; Bradford's Hist. of Plymouth, p. 328.

‡ None but church members shall be allowed the privileges of freemen.—Statute of 1631, Massachusetts.







unharméd. When Cromwell granted to Sir Thomas Temple the country east of the Sagadahoc, at the time that the persecution of the Quakers was at its greatest height, with the design of affording them a place of refuge beyond the limits even of the Province of Maine,\* which they had just conquered by violence; the anger of Massachusetts Puritans fell upon the head of the Protector, himself a Puritan, and an Independent of the strictest sect at home. But time allows no allusion to-day to historic details, except what is essential to the vindication of the truth of history. The fact that the 19th of August, Old Style, is the true date of the foundation of England's title to the continent, is all we are called upon to establish.

It may be said, that in giving this prominence to the occupation of the country by the colony of Popham, we overlook other events of importance in establishing the English title—the possession of the Elizabeth Isles by Gosnold in 1602, and the settlement of Jamestown May 13th, 1607, prior to the landing of the Popham Colony at Sagadahoc.

In reference to the occupation of Elizabeth Isles by

Any attempt to change the form of government is punishable with death.—Statute of 1641, Col. Laws, p. 59.

Absence from meeting on Sunday, fast, or thanksgiving, subjected the offender to a fine.—Col. Laws, p. 103.

Keeping or observing Christmas was punishable by fine.—Col. Laws, p. 119.

Wages to be regulated in each town by vote of the freemen of each.—Col. Laws, p. 156.

Baptists are to be punished by banishment.—Colony Laws, 1646, p. 120.

Quakers to be imprisoned and then banished, on pain of death if they returned.—Colony Laws, 1658, p. 123.

Witches shall be put to death.—Colony Laws, 1641, p. 59.

Magistrates shall issue warrants to a constable, and in his absence to any person, to cause Quakers to be stripped naked from the middle upward; tied to a cart's tail, and whipped from town to town till conveyed out of our jurisdiction.—Colony Laws, p. 125.

Under these laws Baptists had their ears cropped in Boston as late as 1658, and Quakers were put to death.

\* N. Y. Doc. Hist. vol. ix. p. 71, 75.



Gosnold, it is sufficient to say, that it was prior to the date of the Royal Charter, and consequently of no legal effect in establishing title. As to the settlement of Jamestown, it was south of the fortieth parallel of latitude, and therefore did not come in conflict with the French King's prior charter to De Monts. The territory between the fortieth and the forty-fifth degrees only, was in dispute. Although the maps of the time made New-France to extend from the thirty-third to the fiftieth degree of north latitude, France practically abandoned the country south of the fortieth degree from the time of the grant of the charter to De Monts, so that below that line south, it was open to any people who might have the courage to possess it; this south line of De Monts' grant, intersecting what is now Pennsylvania, just north of the city of Philadelphia, cutting Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois very nearly in their centre. Had there been no English settlement or occupancy north of the fortieth parallel of latitude prior to 1610, when Poutrincourt obtained a new grant of Acadia, the whole country north of that line must have fallen into the hands of the French.

The reason, undoubtedly, why France at this time extended her claims no further south than the fortieth parallel was, a fear of exciting the jealousy and hostility of the Spaniards. In 1562, when Ribaut and Laudonniere planted at Port Royal, Spain looked upon it as an invasion of her just domain, and promptly expelled the French invaders. Recent discoveries show that she watched with a most jealous eye the fate of the earlier voyages of Cartier from 1534 to 1541.\* Spain, at that time, was the great military and naval power of Europe. There can be no doubt that the limiting of De Monts' charter to the fortieth parallel of latitude, seven degrees

\* See Historical Magazine, January, 1862, p. 14.



short of all her previous claims, was induced by a dread of Spanish interference. Spanish jealousy showed itself equally in opposition to the English occupation of the country, but their prompt assertion in 1613 of their title, averring the actual occupation of the country, and the denial, on the part of King James, of any validity in the Bull of the Pope, upheld the right of England.

It was not Spain, however, but France that became the actual competitor of England in the struggle for the new dominion. The relations of Spain and France were friendly. Between Spain and England there were many irritations, and so far had this ill-feeling grown, that the capture of English ships by Spanish cruisers was not an uncommon occurrence, as in the case of Challons, and others, bound to New-England, for purposes of colonization.

The French, therefore, made no claim to that Virginia occupied by the colony at Jamestown, while Spain claimed the whole country. French plans of empire looked northward and westward, resting their base on the great inland sea, or gulf lying inside Cape Sable and Cape Cod, where, for a whole century previous, from 1504, and onward, their fishermen had found the choicest treasures of the sea.

Whoever held this region, as all now see, must eventually become the dominant power of the New World.

The national feeling was not fully aroused in either country to the greatness of the prize at stake. Champlain comprehended the true measure of the occasion, and its importance to his country; while Sir Ferdinando Gorges, with equal grasp of intellect, rested on a more secure foundation the confidence of his sovereign.





But the people of England were incapable of estimating the value of the prize, or doing justice to the man who secured it.

In the debate in the House of Commons, in 1621 and 1622, on the bill to abrogate or annul the New-England charter, and throw open the fisheries, briefly reported in the parliamentary journals, the issue was, "*Which is of most value, fishing or plantations?*" and the result showed that the enemies of colonization were in the ascendant, and a bill to this effect passed the House. By the influence of the King acting with the Lords, it was prevented from becoming a law.\*

From the time of the first conflict at Mount Desert, where Father Du Thet was killed in defending his home, in 1613—the first shedding of blood between the French and English on this continent—till the fall of Quebec, in 1759, and the Treaty of Peace consequent thereon, in 1763, surrendering New-France to Great Britain, there was a strife of races, of nationalities and of religion for the territory of New-England, while Virginia, along the Atlantic slope, was never molested by the French.

The western boundary of Virginia was the Pacific Ocean, and she came into conflict with France when she crossed the Alleghanies and descended into the Mississippi Basin, and there met the French settlers, who had seized upon the western waters, claiming a continuous possession of the entire regions drained by the waters of the Mississippi and the St. Lawrence. Had England acquired nothing in the way of title in the New

\* April 19, 1621, "Mr. Neale said three hundred ships, at least, had gone this year from these ports," p. 591. Nov. 20, 1621, "Mr. Glanville moved to speed the bill," etc. "Sir Ferdinando Gorges hath exhibited patent," etc. "Friday next Sir F. G., to be heard," p. 640. Dec. 1, 1621, Bill under consideration. "Mr. Guy moves a provision; debate by Mr. Neale, Mr. Secretary, Dr. Gooch, Sir Edward Gyles, Mr. Guy, and Shewell, which is of most value, fishing or plantations? £120,000 brought in annually by fishing." "Provision lost. Bill passed, p. 654."—Extracts from the Journal of the Commons.





World north of the fortieth parallel prior to the Plymouth Plantation in 1620, there is no reason to doubt that France would have swept the British power from the continent at the first clash of arms with Great Britain.

It was this possession of the shores of the Atlantic Ocean, within the limits of the fortieth and forty-fifth degrees of north latitude, prior to 1610, that settled the future destiny of the continent of North-America. The consummation of title, therefore, perfected by the act of possession of August nineteenth, O. S. 1607, by the Popham Colony, whose two hundred and fifty-fifth anniversary we this day celebrate, must, if these premises are admitted, forever remain the great fact in the history of the New World.

The Maine Historical Society, whose duty it is made, by the charter establishing it, "to collect and preserve whatever may tend to explain and illustrate the civil, ecclesiastical, and natural history of this State and the United States," was pleased to approve of the act of two of its members, then in the service of the State, who petitioned the authorities of the General Government, that this great work of national defence, then about to be undertaken, should be named *FORT POPHAM*, in honor of George Popham, the Governor, who led the first British Colony into New-England, under the charter of April 10, 1606, and who, discharging the duties of his office as President, and presenting a report in the form of a letter, to the King, dated at Fort St. George, December 13, 1607,\* here laid down his life—the first man of the English race whose bones were laid beneath the soil of New-England.

\* Popham's Letter in the Maine Hist. Coll. vol. v. p. 341.



The venerable Chief of the Engineer Bureau of the United States Army, to whom this petition was referred, ever jealous of the honor of his country, not only as to the character of its military structures, but as to the names, to whose honor they should attest—promptly indorsed the application, and it met the ready approval of the Secretary of War.\*

To mark, with greater distinctness, the event thus commemorated, the Maine Historical Society asked permission to place within the walls of this Fort a MEMORIAL STONE, bearing on its face an appropriate inscription of the event; and that a TABLET, in memory of George Popham, so honorably associated with the great event of that period, should be allowed to form a portion of its walls.

By the favor of the Government we have this day performed that duty, with appropriate form and ceremony. The learned President of the Maine Historical Society has announced the historic facts on which this somewhat novel proceeding has taken place. The accomplished and honored Chief Magistrate of the State has given to the occasion the influence of his official

\* The following correspondence, copied from the files of the War Office, shows the prompt action of the Government in the matter:

TO THE HON. SIMON CAMERON, Secretary of War:

The undersigned, citizens of Maine, respectfully request that the new Fort to be erected at the mouth of the Kenebec river, in Maine, may be named FORT POPHAM, in honor of Capt. George Popham, brother of the learned Chief-Justice Popham, of England.

Capt. George Popham, as the Governor of the first English Colony in New-England, built a fort at or near the site of the proposed fort, in the year 1607, where he died February 5, 1608, and was buried, being the first person of his race whose bones were laid beneath the soil of New-England, and whose grave will be appropriately marked by the fort that rises over his place of burial.

(Signed)

JOHN A. POOR,  
REUEL WILLIAMS.

WASHINGTON, November 18, 1861.

This proposal for a name was favorably received at the Engineer Bureau, by General Totten, who laid the matter before the Secretary of War.

On the 23d of November, General Cameron acted on the foregoing petition, and entered thereon: "Name approved."

"SIMON CAMERON, Secretary of War.

"WAR DEPARTMENT, Washington, November 23, 1861."



station, and the more acceptable service of eloquent words, proclaiming the importance of the event commemorated, upon the history of the country and the world, while the Episcopal Bishop of the Diocese of Maine and the President of our oldest Seminary of learning, as Chairman of the Standing Committee of the Maine Historical Society, have jointly participated in the appropriate services of this occasion, and that most ancient, Masonic Fraternity, has lent to the celebration whatever of dignity or grace the wisest of their Order have been able to embody in artistic form and expression. With the consent of the Government, these imposing ceremonies have proceeded, and finally the skillful hand of him who is charged with the construction of this Fort,\* will place this stone in its final resting-place—for the information of those who come after us—proclaiming to future times, in the simple eloquence of truthful words, that

THE FIRST COLONY  
ON THE SHORES OF NEW-ENGLAND  
Was Founded Here,  
August 19th, O. S. 1607,  
under  
GEORGE POPHAM.

It would ill comport with the dignity of this occasion to fail to speak of him, whose name is thus imperishably connected with the history of our State and Nation. To his family and the events of his life others may more appropriately refer. We allude to him as a public man, and to his claims to public gratitude and respect. His chief distinction is, that he was one of the eight persons named in the great charter of April 10th, 1606, and that he led to these shores the first colony under that charter. In it he is styled *gentleman*,

\* Captain T. L. Casey, U. S. Engineers.





and he must have been a man of consequence and position, from the fact that he was one of its grantees. After his death, Gorges, in a few brief lines, thus sums up his character: "He was well stricken in years, and had long been an infirm man. Howsoever, heartened by hopes, willing he was to die in acting something that might be serviceable to God, and honorable to his country."\* A glorious consummation of a long life, devoted to duty, to his country, and his God.†

Within the walls of this Fort, and as a companion-piece to the memorial stone, which records the historic fact of this day's celebration, the Maine Historical Society will place a tablet in memory of George Popham, expressing, in that sonorous Latin language which he employed in his communication to the King, and which was at that time used by all who wrote for enduring fame, these words:

In Memoriam  
 GEORGII POPHAM,  
 Angliæ qui primus ab oris  
 Coloniam collocavit in Nov. Angliæ terris,  
 Augusti mense annoque MDCVII.  
 Leges literasque Anglicanas  
 Et fidem ecclesiamque Christi  
 In has sylvas duxit.  
 Solus ex colonis atque senex obiit  
 Nonis Februariis sequentibus,  
 Et juxta hunc locum est sepultus.

Societate Historica Mainensi auspicante,  
 In præsidio ejus nomen ferente,  
 Quarto die ante calendas Septembres  
 Annoque MDCCCLXII.  
 Multis civibus intuentibus,  
 Hic lapis positus est.

\* Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 22, vol. ii. Maine Hist. Coll.

† Mrs. Sigourney has since embodied in song, in one of her happiest efforts, the heroic deeds of Popham. See Appendix C.



[TRANSLATION.]

IN MEMORY OF  
GEORGE POPHAM

Who first from the shores of England

Founded a Colony in New-England

August, 1607.

He brought into these wilds

English laws and learning

And the faith and the Church of Christ.

He only of the colonists, and in his old age, died

On the fifth of the following February

And was buried near this spot.

Under the auspices of the Maine Historical Society

In the Fort bearing his name

August 29, 1862,

In the presence of many citizens

This stone was placed.

This fort, so conspicuously placed, bearing these appropriate testimonials, thus becomes a fitting monument to perpetuate the events of the early history of New-England, and transmit to future times, the memory of those illustrious men who laid the foundation of English colonies in America; to which the laws, the institutions and civilization of England were transferred, and from which, has sprung the glorious fabric of American Constitutional Government.

Standing here to-day, in sight of the spot where Popham, two hundred and fifty-five years ago, took upon himself the office of President; and near the place where, on the fifth of February following, he died, it seems our privilege to be admitted into his presence-chamber, as for the last time he had summoned around him his faithful assistants and companions, and gave commands for the future. The scene is worthy of a painter's pencil and a poet's pen. The ever-faithful and heroic Raleigh Gilbert, "a man," says Gorges, "worthy to be



beloved of them for his industry and care for their well-being"—the future President of the colony—is by his side. The pious Richard Seymour administers to him words of comfort and consolation. Captain Richard Davies, of all his assistants, was absent in England. His devoted companions stand around their dying chief, when, in the language of Israel's great law-giver, laying the burden of the government on Joshua, he might well say to Raleigh Gilbert: "Be strong and of a good courage, for thou must go with this people into the land which the Lord hath sworn unto their fathers to give them: and thou shalt cause them to inherit it. And the Lord he it is that doth go before thee: he will be with thee, he will not fail thee, neither forsake thee: fear not, neither be dismayed."

"So Moses, the servant of the Lord, died there, in the land of Moab, according to the word of the Lord. And he buried him in a valley in the land of Moab, over against Bethpeor; but no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day."

In the far-distant future, not two hundred and fifty-five years from this day, the period of time that has intervened since his death, but in that period of more than three thousand years to come, like that from the death of Israel's law-giver, to that of Popham, these stones which are here builded, shall mark the place of his sepulture, and the myriads of thronging pilgrims, led by eager curiosity, to tread the soil of this peninsula of Sabino, hereafter made classic by song and story, shall pause and read, on that memorial stone, the record of his great work; and when we who are now here, shall have passed away, and beyond the reach of story or tradition, Popham's name shall live in the history of the mighty race, who have changed this continent from one





vast wilderness to a marvel of refinement and beauty, fitted for the enjoyment of civilized man.

His sagacity and ability are best evidenced by the fact, that after the experience of two hundred and fifty-five years, the highest military skill has confirmed the wisdom of his choice of a place of settlement, by the adoption of it as the proper site of the great work of defence for the Kennebec River.\*

To this spot multitudes shall annually repair, for this region will continue to be, what it ever was, to the early navigators and colonists of both France and England—a chief point of interest. The French historian L'Escarbot, speaking of this river, says "*it shortened the way*" to the great river of Canada.† Gosnold's landfall, in 1602, was at Sagadahoc.‡ Pring, in 1603, made it the chief point of his discoveries; and the great voyage of Weymouth was to "the most excellent and beneficyall river of Sagadahoc."§ Here the English remained in 1608 and 1609, as related by the French Jesuits.¶ Here Vines pursued his voca-

\* See Note A, with its accompanying Map.

† L'Escarbot, p. 497.

‡ Strachey, Hakluyt Society edition, p. 155; caption at the head of the chapter. See Poor's Vindication of Gorges, p. 30, note 2.

§ Much controversy and discussion have arisen as to the route of Weymouth, and as to the river he explored. Belknap's authority was generally accepted, fixing it at the Penobscot, till the critical eye and more ample knowledge of the late John McKeen, Esq., detected its errors. He maintained that the Kennebec was the true river. Mr. George Prince and Rev. Mr. Cushman have argued in favor of the river St. George. Mr. B. K. Sewall and Rev. Mr. Ballard maintain the views of Mr. McKeen. Hon. W. Willis adheres to Belknap's authority. Strachey's positive statement that it was the Sagadahoc, was unknown to Belknap.

I find in Purchase, a fact not alluded to by any of these writers, that may aid in solving the difficulty. John Stoneman, of Plymouth, who went out with Weymouth, in 1605, sailed as pilot in the ship Richard, of Plymouth, in charge of Henry Challons commander, in Gorges' employ, to found the colony at Sagadahoc, in 1606. Nicholas Hine, of Cockington, near Dartmouth, was master. Although Challons failed of his object, by disregarding his instructions, and was taken captive by the Spaniards, his purpose of going to Sagadahoc is expressly stated, and his pilot was of Weymouth's party in 1605.

This discovery of the name of *Hine*, as master under Challons, also relieves us of the difficulty in the apparent contradiction between Gorges and Strachey; the former using the name of Challons as master, the latter calling the master's name Haines, leading us to suppose there were two several voyages, instead of one in fact.

¶ Relations of the Jesuits, vol. i. p. 36.





tion,\* and hither all the fishing vessels came, because the finest fish were taken in this region. The salmon of the Kennebec are to this day known in all our cities.

The Council of New-England, on the twenty-fourth of July, 1622, set apart "two great islands in the river of Sagadahoc to be reserved for the public plantation," and "a place between the branches of the two rivers" "*for a public city.*"† Though the strife of races and of nationalities has kept back the settlement of this whole region, and the still more disastrous conflicts of rival grants and hostile occupation, destroyed for generations all plans of improvement, who shall dare to say that these plans shall not be realized?

When this Acadian peninsula, with its one hundred and fifty thousand square miles of territory, and its abundant resources, shall contain a population equal to that now peopling the British Isles,—this magnificent estuary, with its deep sea-soundings, discharging a larger volume of water than any river of the Atlantic coast, between the St. John and the Mississippi, may become the chief seat of wealth and power, of the mighty race who inhabit the continent,—why then *may* not the history of other lands become ours, and another Liverpool here rival the great commercial city of New-England; and Boston become to the city of the Sagadahoc, what Bristol is to the great shipping port of the Mersey?‡

We miss from our celebration to-day, one who was instrumental in creating the immediate occasion of it, and in affixing the name of Popham to this great pub-

\* Gorges' Briefe Narration, p. 24.

† Minutes of the Council of New-England, July twenty-fourth, 1622. Calendar of Col. State Papers, vol. i. p. 32. This paper is given in full in Poor's Vindication of Gorges, in the Appendix.

‡ The extraordinary advantages of Bath for a naval and military dépôt, are admitted by all military engineers, but no effort adequate to such a consummation has yet been made.



lie work, and who looked forward with prophetic eye to this day's proceedings.

The propriety of associating important historic events with works of national defence, and of attesting thereby to the fame of the actors therein, met the approval of his mature judgment, and his last act of public duty was an appeal to the Secretary of War for the erection of this fort, and affixing to it the name it now bears.\* His stern countenance relaxed into a smile at the first suggestion of this anniversary celebration, and the placing within the walls of this fort of this memorial stone.

Born on the banks of this river, the place of his birth continued for fourscore years to be his home; and without the aid of anything but his strong character and his indomitable will, he reached wealth and eminence early in life, and bore at the close of it, the title of "the first citizen of Maine." †

This is not the time or place to pronounce his eulogy; an abler pen at the appointed hour shall perform this pleasing duty. But among the many memorials of his enterprise and public spirit that adorn the banks of the Kennebec, this fort attests and will attest the praise of Reuel Williams, while it is made by this day's celebration a fitting monument to preserve in remembrance the greater events of an earlier time.

We must not, in this connection, forget our obligations to the people of the colony of Massachusetts, and the early settlers of Plymouth, for their share in conquering the continent for our race, though dealing harshly with Maine. ‡ These Massachusetts Puri-

\* By appointment of Governor Washburn, Mr. Williams visited Washington, November first, 1861, as one of the Commissioners of Maine, in reference to the public defences of the State, his first visit after eighteen years' absence. He retired from the Senate in 1843, resigning after having been reelected for six years. He left Washington November eighteenth, 1861, after a personal interview on that day with the Secretary of War.

† Hon. I. Washburn, Jr., Governor of Maine.

‡ See petition of Edward Godfrey and other inhabitants of Maine, to the Parliament of the Commonwealth. Cal. Col. State Papers, vol. i. p. 479.



tans of the Saxon type, inheriting all the gloomy errors of a cruel and bloody period, under the iron rule of the Tudors, were ready to demand of Elizabeth the enforcement of the Act of Uniformity against Papists, but refused obedience to it themselves. Nor would they yield to the decision of a majority of the clergy, who in 1562, in full convention, voted to retain the priestly vestments and the forms of a liturgy. While agreeing to all the doctrines of its creed, they grew restless under the forms of the church service, elevated non-essentials into the dignity of principles, and stigmatized the Prayer-Book and the priestly robes as badges of Popery.

They imagined that by a severe austerity they secured the favor of God, and became his chosen people. They mistook their hatred of others for hatred of sin. They set up their own morbid convictions as the standard of right, and rather than submit to the laws of their own land, they endured their penalties, or sought escape from them by expatriation.

Once planted on the shores of New-England, the Puritans of Massachusetts Bay endeavored to exterminate every thing that stood in the way of their ambition.\* Hence, after their conquest of Maine, they

Also, Godfrey's Letters in Mr. Geo. Folsom's Catalogue of Papers in the English State Paper Office in relation to Maine, pp. 52, 54.

\* The charter of the Massachusetts Company of March 4th, 1629, authorized them to make laws and ordinances for their government, "*not contrary to the laws of England.*" Notwithstanding this they proceeded at once to frame a code of laws designed for the purpose, abrogating the laws of England whenever they stood in the way of their own wishes. The obvious purpose of the charter was to allow such minor regulations to be made as might meet the peculiar wants of the local population. A similar provision is inserted in charters in modern times, designed to allow the recipients of such grants to exercise their rights in any way they choose, not infringing any of the general laws of the State. These Puritans construed their grant differently from all others, because they designed to establish a religious community on a plan of their own, discarding all portions of the English law, unless reënacted by themselves.

Their be-praised Body of Liberties enacted in 1641, but not printed till within about thirty years since, virtually abrogated the laws of England.

Equally striking was their claim to the territory of Maine. The political troubles at home, from 1637 to the restoration of Charles II., in 1660, withdrew public





gloried in extirpating every trace of title granted to others, making war on whatever was opposed to them, aiming at unlimited despotism. True, they planted other men's fields, instead of devastating them, and seized upon the territory of others by the same authority and in the same spirit as the Israelites drove out the tribes, that formerly possessed the valley of the Jordan.

It is hardly necessary to remind the student of American history that, at the close of the seventeenth century, as at the beginning, the two great geographical divisions of English dominion on this continent, north of the Delaware, were "the Provinces of New-York and Sagadahoc." Such are the definitions employed in the grant of that dominion by King Charles II. to his brother, the Duke of York; and such are the titles under which the Duke of York, when he ascended the throne as James II., commissioned his Governor, Col. Thomas Dongan, afterwards Earl of Limerick, to exercise authority over these countries. In England, a country of precedents, where the law advisers of the Crown always scrupulously adhered to ancient records in the preparation of official documents, such recognition, eighty years after the death of George Popham, is another proof, if any were wanting, of the legal establishment of England's claims in these latitudes being inseparable from the foundation of the first settlement, which to-day we commemorate.

To review, in the most hurried manner, the events attention almost entirely from America, and it was not till 1676 that the heirs of Gorges, nearly worn out in the controversy, obtained a decision in their favor against her usurpations. Thereupon March 13, 1677, for £1250 they purchased the title of Gorges' heirs.

Finally in 1684, on *scire facias*, the Court of Chancery declared their charter forfeited, and thereby put an end to the Massachusetts theocracy.

A new charter protecting all Protestant Christians in the exercise of their religion, was granted by William and Mary, in 1691, including the colony of Plymouth and of Massachusetts, the Province of Maine, and Sagadahoc, under one government, and Sir William Phipps, a native of Maine, was appointed Governor.



affecting our race, that have transpired within the two hundred and fifty-five years since it was planted here, would transcend the proper limits of this occasion. Less than five millions of people, at that time engaged in the ruder forms of labor, were shut up in the narrow limits of the British Isles,—those who speak the English language to-day in the two hemispheres, hold dominion over one fifth of the earth's surface, and govern one fourth of the human species.\*

Their material greatness commenced with colonizing North-America. Slowly, patiently and in much suffering, our fathers gained possession of this soil. The title was secured by the act of possession of the Popham Colony. Others came in to help to hold it; political troubles at home favored emigration hither; and one hundred years after Popham, three hundred thousand people of the Saxo-Norman race inhabited the then eleven existing colonies. During the next sixty years they had mastered the French, and gained the Atlantic slope from the St. Lawrence to Florida. Before the end of the next one hundred years the same people had grown into the Colossal Empire of the West, embracing thirty-four States, and regions yet unpeopled of still greater extent, including, in all their dominions, a territory equal to the continent of Europe, inhabited by more than thirty millions of human beings, speaking one language; while a new power has arisen in North-America, the Colonial Empire of Great Britain, extending over a larger, but less valuable territory than the United States, and containing more than three millions of inhabitants.

Temporary differences and periods of alienated feeling, will from time to time arise, but nothing can prevent the gradual and cordial union of the English-speaking people, of this continent in every thing essen-

\* See Appendix D.



tial to their highest welfare. Though divided into various governments, each pursuing its own lawful ends, in obedience to that principle of political harmony, that allows each to revolve, in its own appropriate orbit, around its common centre, an enlightened sense of justice, and obedience to the Divine law, as the highest of all good to communities and states, is the daily lesson of their life. Let, then, each returning anniversary of this day's commemoration draw closer and closer the bonds of fraternal fellowship, and strengthen those ties of lineage that shall gradually encircle the earth, and constitute all mankind of various races and nationalities, one final brotherhood of nations.

Two hundred and fifty-five years have sufficed to change this wilderness continent, as if by enchantment, into the home of a refined civilization. Cultivated fields, clustering villages, the refinements of city life, rise to our immediate view; stretching from this point eastward to Ascension Bay,—northward to the Laurentian Hills,—southward to the Gulf of Mexico, and westward to the Pacific seas, where San Francisco, at the Golden Gate, at the touch of the telegraph, sends to us kindly greetings for this hour.

The improvement in agricultural implements, the wonders of the power-loom and the spinning-jenny, the marvels of the steamship, the mysteries of the photograph, the magic of the telegraph, and the omnipotent power of the locomotive railway, have since been made our ever-willing ministers, so that man seems almost invested with ubiquity and omnipotence; yet each revolving year brings forth new marvels, till the finite mind is overwhelmed at any attempt to forecast the future.

And the historian of our race traces back this development to the two first acts in the great drama of American history by which the title of England to the Con-





tlement was established ; the first, closing with the grant of the Great Charter of April 10th, 1606 ; the second, with the formal act of possession of the New World under it, August 19th, O. S. 1607, thereby making the title, forever clear and unquestionable.

On that day, and upon this peninsula of Sabino, was unfurled that proud flag that had so long braved the battle and the breeze ; then our fathers' flag—and now the flag of the Fatherland—and beneath its waving folds were proclaimed, for the first time, the political principles which lie at the foundation of free government, in ever memorable words.

"I give," said King James, "to my loving subjects, liberty to settle Virginia, in the north of America, between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth degrees of north latitude. I authorize them to transport thither any of my own people, or those of other lands, and appoint over them a government of their own choice, subject to my approval, according to the laws of this kingdom. I authorize them to work mines, coin money, collect duties by imposts, and to expel all intruders therefrom by military force ; and I declare, that all children born therein, and all persons residing therein, are, and shall always remain citizens, entitled to all the rights, privileges, and immunities of the loyal subjects of the British realm.

"And I do further declare, that these, my loving subjects, shall have the right annually to elect a President, and other officers ; that the Christian Religion, established in this our kingdom, shall be therein preached and observed ; that lands shall descend to heirs, according to the provisions of our ancient laws ; that trial by jury of twelve men is established in all criminal cases, with a right of pardon by the King ; that in civil causes the President and Council shall determine between party and party, keeping full records





of all proceedings and judgments, with a right of appeal to the King in council; that no man shall be tried as an offender outside of the Colony where the alleged offence was committed, and no offences shall be capital except tumult, rebellion, conspiracy, mutiny, and sedition, murder, manslaughter, incest, rape, and adultery. And I do further declare, and ordain, that my loving subjects in America shall forever possess and enjoy the right to make all needful laws for their own government, provided only, that they be consonant to the laws of England. And these, my loving subjects, shall be, and forever remain, entitled to the protection of the British Crown, and I establish over them the government of the King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland.”\*

This charter of liberties was never revoked. It was a decree of universal emancipation, and every man of any color, from any clime, was by this act of King James redeemed, regenerated, disenthralled, the moment he touched the soil of America, between the thirty-fourth and forty-fifth degrees of north latitude; and he at once became entitled to all the rights of citizenship—one hundred and fifty years before the decree of Lord Mansfield struck off the chains and fetters from the African in England. This ordinance also established the right of the people to self-government, subject only to the paramount authority of the Crown and Laws of England.

These solemn formalities, unknown to any other of the early colonies, counselled by the Lord Chief-Justice of England, whose brother, as President of the infant commonwealth, planted on these shores the emblems of the authority of his nation,—proclaimed in no doubtful accents to all other nations, that here, the title

\* See Poor's Vindication of Gorges, Appendix, for this constituent Code of Laws of King James.



of England was established. That pledge of the protection of his government, which every Englishman has always felt when he planted his foot on any portion of the empire of his sovereign, gave strength and courage to this colony,—and when the humble settlers of Plymouth, thirteen years later, impressed with their feet the sandy shores of Cape Cod, the claim of England to the country had been vindicated and established, against the asserted claims of both Spain and France.

The power of England remained undisturbed west of Sagadahoc, and southward, till it was finally yielded on the third of September, 1783—one hundred and seventy-six years from the time it was first planted—when all political connection with Great Britain was dissolved, on the conclusion of the Definitive Treaty of Peace. In announcing that fact, King George the Third said: “In thus admitting their separation from the Crown of these kingdoms, I have sacrificed every consideration of my own, to the wishes and opinions of my people. I make it my humble and earnest prayer to Almighty God, that Great Britain may not feel the evils which might result from so great a dismemberment of the empire; and that America may be free from the calamities which have formerly proved, in the mother country, how essential monarchy is to the enjoyment of constitutional liberty. Religion, language, interest, affections may, and I hope will yet prove a bond of permanent union between the two countries. To this end neither attention nor disposition on my part shall be wanting.”

Memorable words, for they admit the national error.

But the repentance of the King had come too late. The loyal subjects of King James had planted on these shores the principles of civil and religious liberty, under his guidance and his express authority; and it was not in the power of King or Parliament, after one



hundred and seventy-six years of the exercise of these rights, to reclaim them by force of arms.

It was in defence of rights granted by King James that our fathers took up arms, against the arbitrary enactments of King George the Third and his Parliament, under the lead of Sir George Grenville, then first Minister of the Crown. They defended a principle since made universal in its application, in every part of the British Colonial Empire. They claimed only their rights as loyal subjects of Great Britain.

Our fathers charged the acts of oppression, commencing in 1763, and ending in the Revolution of 1776, on the King, as the responsible head of the British government, but the exact truth still remains obscured, from want of public access, till a recent date, to the state papers of that period. If the odium of these acts shall justly fall on the head of the Minister rather than on the King, to what an eminence of guilt did Sir George Grenville attain, and how different the award of future over cotemporary times and opinions, as to the claims to veneration of the two men of England most intimately associated with American affairs, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, the father of English Colonization in America, a private citizen,—and Sir George Grenville, the highest officer of state, who inaugurated those measures that caused the final separation of the thirteen North-American Colonies from the British Crown,—an event, under the circumstances in which it was achieved, every day seen to have been most disastrous to humanity and our race.

The mind of each one present instinctively turns back to-day, over this long line of history, pausing to survey, in this broad sweep, the great epochs that mark its progress. It lingers longest in contemplating the initiatory steps that gave title and possession to the







country,—and delights to loiter, here, around this cherished spot, and recall to present view the deeds of Gorges and Popham, and those who assisted them to transport hither the Saxo-Norman race; for that race, planted on this new continent, has favored and illustrated every thing that tends to the advancement of freedom and humanity, whatever may have been its occasional errors.

We have established our power as a people, developed the natural resources of our country, and demonstrated the ability of our government to resist foreign aggression. One further duty remains—the vindication of its principles in reference to ourselves. Can a government, resting for its strength and support on the consent of the governed, so far maintain its power as to suppress insurrection without weakening the safeguards to personal liberty? Can popular elections fill the highest offices of the state, and insure that strength and stability to the government, that can vindicate its power in times of domestic insurrection, or open rebellion, like that, now shaking it to its foundations?

Putting our trust in that power that alone can save us, invoking that arm that can alone be stretched forth for our deliverance, we bow our wills to the Divine teaching.

What though at this hour clouds and darkness hang like a thick pall over our country, and in the excess of our marvellous prosperity, we are called for a time to self-abasement and trial, the race shall survive all shocks of civil strife and of foreign invasion, and rise superior to both; this free government emerge into the full strength and measure of its giant proportions; and “the gorgeous ensign of the Republic,” known and honored throughout the earth, shall once more float, full and free, as in former days, over a united and prosperous people.



## APPENDIX.

---

### NOTE A.

To enable those not familiar with the localities of Sabino, to understand the allusions made to them, a map and a brief description are given.

The Sagadahoc river, so famous in the early history of the country, is formed by the junction of two large rivers, the Androscoggin and the Kennebec, at Merrymeeting Bay,\* twenty-five miles from the sea, from which junction the Sagadahoc is a deep estuary of very irregular width, often contracted into narrow limits, but carrying a large volume of water to the ocean.

At its mouth, between Stage Island on the eastern shore, and the lower end of the Peninsula of Sabino on the west, it is about a mile and a half in width. One mile above this, is its narrowest point, where the north-east point of the Sabino Peninsula projects far out into the channel, nearly opposite which point, only a few rods higher up the river, the lower end of a sharp rocky isle, called Long Island, narrows the main channel to less than a third of a mile. There is no navigable passage on the eastern side of this island. This outermost north-eastern point of the Sabino Peninsula is the site of Fort Popham. It was occupied by a small fort in the war of 1812. Above this point opens out Adkins Bay, extending south-west for a mile or more, where formerly it evidently connected with the ocean. In De Barre's chart, made for the British government between 1764 and 1774, it is laid down as flats, subject to the overflow of the tide, between this Bay and the ocean. At the present time, there is enough of earth formed by action of the sea, to afford a good road-bed, free from overflow, connecting Sabino with the mainland.

From Merrymeeting Bay south to the ocean, there is a constant succession of narrows, formed by high, sharp, projecting points of rock, alternating into broad reaches or bays. A reach of some miles in front of the city of Bath, varying from one half to a mile in width, having abundant depth of water, forms one of the noblest landlocked harbors in the world, when the river turns, first east, at right angles, then again south, between high, rocky shores, with great depths of water. Nothing can be more beautiful or picturesque than the sail between Merrymeeting Bay and the sea.

As you descend towards the mouth of the river, the Island of Seguin, a high, rounded, rocky ridge, rising one hundred and forty feet above the sea-level, stands directly in front, apparently closing the mouth of the river, though three miles distant from it, clothed with a native growth of evergreen to its summit. Above this, rises a first-class lighthouse, holding in its spacious iron lantern a Fresnel lens of the largest size, seen for more than twenty miles at sea, and for a very great distance from the high lands of the interior.

The Peninsula of Sabino is the outer point of the mainland, on the right

\* Marimitin. See Father Dreuilletts' Journal of an Embassy from Canada to New-England, in 1659, published from a translation of John G. Shea, with valuable notes, in the Collections of the New-York Historical Society, 1857, vol. iii. Second Series, part i. page 303. The country was then occupied from Cushnoc (Augusta) to Merrymeeting Bay.



or west bank of the river, three miles from Seguin. It is very nearly an irregular triangle in shape, its shortest line fronting the Sagadahoc—the other two side-lines formed, one by Adkins Bay, and the other by the ocean. It rises into two rocky ridges, lying nearly east and west of each other, with a deep depression running north and south the bulk of the land, lying west of it, where it rises from two to three hundred feet into two considerable peaks in a ridge running north and south. In the valley, or narrow depression running north and south, the land is free from stones, and the soil is made up chiefly of sand. Toward its southern end there is a beautifully clear lake or pond of fresh water sufficient for the wants of the Peninsula. The level of this lake is only about thirty or forty feet above the sea, and is said at times to be reached by the flashing spray which is dashed with prodigious force at times upon this rocky shore.

Near the shore of Adkins Bay is a spring of water half a mile from the site of Fort Popham, near which, are remains of ancient habitations; and those who have explored the localities profess their belief that the principal fort was in the "vicinity of this spring." There is an old gentleman still living, more than ninety years of age, who was present at the celebration, who testifies to the ploughing across a covered way between the ruins of an old fort and this spring of water, in his early days.

The whole Peninsula was originally covered with a forest growth, and materials would have been abundant for the building of houses and a stockade fort.

As to the probable site of their fort, that must depend upon the purpose of its construction. If an European foe, Spaniard or French, was dreaded, the site of the present fort would naturally be chosen. If, on the other hand, the enemy they feared was the Indian, they would naturally select a spot convenient to fresh water, where they could best guard the approach of the foe, coming across the neck, that alone connected the peninsula with the main. The site pointed out as that of their fort, would, in that view of the case, be at once determined on the southern shore of Adkins Bay, near to the neck, in the vicinity of this spring.

No one can fail to perceive the wonderful foresight of the men who selected this spot for their plantation. Easily approached at all times by water, capable of being defended at all points, those in possession of this peninsula hold complete control of the country and the rivers above, one of the finest agricultural districts in New-England. It was also the finest river for fish on the coast. When the Pilgrims of Plymouth were considering the question of abandoning their home, from the poverty of the soil and the want of means of subsistence, Sir Ferdinando Gorges gave them a valuable tract of land on the Kennebec in 1629, at the time he established their boundaries at Plymouth, which they farmed out to advantage, deriving thence, and from the fisheries their chief means of support. The facts stated by Father Dreuilletts, at the time of his visit in 1650 and 1651, are of great historic interest.

At the time of the celebration, the level floor or parade of the fort was occupied by the large assemblage of people. A platform facing east, overlooked the fort and the Sagadahoc river; resting for its background against the end of the large shed occupied for dressing stone. This platform was occupied by the distinguished guests from abroad, the members of the Historical Society, the Masonic fraternity, and those taking part in the celebration. The various steamers and barges in attendance, the United States revenue cutter, and a large fleet of smaller craft, all gaily dressed in flags, lay at anchor in Adkins Bay. A strong tidal current swept past the fort, aided by a stiff north-west wind. The speaker's stand commanded a complete view of all the localities alluded to.





Half a mile from the fort, a few rods north of the pond or lake before spoken of, on a ridge rising fifty feet above the ocean-level, the large canvas Pavilion was spread, stretching east and west, looking like one vast cathedral in the distance, all its masts crowded with flags. At the conclusion of the services at the fort, the company marched in procession to the Pavilion, where, with refreshments and speeches, the remainder of the day was occupied.

## NOTE B.

### RICHARD SEYMOUR.

At the Pavilion, after a few introductory words, connecting the sentiment proposed with the name of the Chaplain of the Colony, Bishop Burgess read the following paper :

MR. PRESIDENT: Who was Richard Seymour? And why should he be remembered with honor?

The house of Seymour, the second among the English nobility, first rose to eminence through the elevation of Queen Jane, the daughter of Sir John Seymour, the favorite wife of Henry the Eighth, and the mother of Edward the Sixth. Her brother, Sir Edward Seymour, became Earl of Hertford, and in the minority of his nephew, King Edward, was created Duke of Somerset, and governed the realm as Lord Protector. He was twice married, and his second wife, Anne Stanhope, being a lady of high descent, it was made a part of his patent of nobility, that his titles should first be inherited in the line of her children, and only in the event of the failure of that line, should pass to his children by his first wife, Catherine Fillo, and their descendants. Accordingly, the honors forfeited when "the Good Duke," as the Protector was called, perished on the scaffold, being afterwards restored, passed down in the younger line, till it expired in Algernon, Duke of Somerset, in 1750, when they reverted to the elder line, in which they continue till this day.

In the mean time, this elder branch had been seated, all along, at Berry Pomeroy, in Devonshire, a few miles from Totness, from Dartmouth, and from the sea. The eldest son of the Protector, Sir Edward, a Christian name which continued in the eldest sons for eight generations, died in 1593. This son, Sir Edward, the grandson of the Protector, was married in 1576, and died in 1613, having had, according to one account, five sons; according to another, three, besides four daughters. The youngest son, according to both accounts, bore the name of Richard, and this great-grandson of the Protector Somerset, was, I suppose, the Richard Seymour who was the Chaplain of the Popham Colony. The case is sustained as follows :

There is no other person of the name known in genealogical history. Amongst sixty-nine male descendants of the Protector, he is the only Richard.

His age corresponds with the chronology of the occasion. His father having married in 1576, the youngest of three or even of five sons might well have been born within ten years after, so as to have been, in 1607, a young clergyman, just from the University. What more probable than that such a young man should be attracted by this noble adventure, as it happened to be in the hands of his immediate friends?

His residence corresponds with the locality of the enterprise. It was within fifteen or twenty miles of Plymouth, and amongst those gentlemen of Devonshire, who chiefly formed the company with whom this undertaking originated. Of the Plymouth company of 1620, his brother, Sir Edward Seymour, was one of the incorporated members.





This brings us to the most decisive circumstances, which are not a little interesting in the light which they cast upon the history of the colony. At Dartington, close by Berry Pomeroy, was then, and still is, the seat of the old family of Champernoun, which "came in with William the Conqueror." Francis Champernoun, who came to Maine as one of the Councillors under the patent of Gorges, and settled at Kittery, was the nephew of Sir Ferdinando Gorges. Therefore, either Gorges himself, or his sister, or his sister-in-law, must have married a Champernoun. Gorges was Governor of Plymouth, and was the soul of these expeditions long after.

The mother of Sir Walter Raleigh was also a Champernoun; and as she was of course the mother also of his half-brother, the gallant Sir Humphrey Gilbert, it follows that his son, Raleigh Gilbert, the admiral of this expedition, was the grandson of a Champernoun, and had an affinity with Gorges through that family.

Sir John Popham had several children, amongst whom was a daughter Elizabeth, who was married to Sir Richard Champernoun; and thus there was affinity between the families of Gorges, Gilbert, and Popham through the household at Dartington.

Sir Edward Seymour, the father of Richard Seymour, was married, as has been said, in 1576, and his wife was Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Arthur Champernoun; and thus the chain of relationship is complete between the families of Gorges, Raleigh, Gilbert, Popham and Seymour.

Richard Seymour, therefore, the son of Edward Seymour, was related to Gorges, the projector of the colony, to Popham, its patron, to Popham, its President, and to Gilbert, its admiral, all through the common link of the family of his mother. When they sought a Chaplain, they found one in Richard Seymour; and no other Richard Seymour is known except this relative of theirs. May we not regard the identity as, I will not say demonstrated, but fairly established, to the extent of a reasonable conviction?

The connection between the families of Seymour and Popham ceased not with that generation. Sir John Popham, though Wellington, in Somersetshire, was his birth-place and burial-place, purchased from the family of Darell, to which the grandmother of the Protector belonged, the seat of Littlecote, in Wiltshire, on the borders of Berkshire, and here resided his descendants. Sir Edward Seymour, grand-nephew of Richard Seymour, married Letitia Popham, daughter of Francis Popham, Esq., of Littlecote, and had a son named Popham Seymour; and the next Sir Edward, his eldest son, married another Letitia, daughter of Sir Francis Popham, also of Littlecote. This hereditary friendship accords with the association on this spot.

But Richard Seymour has his honor, this day, not from his memorable descent, but from the place assigned him by the Providence which presided over the destinies of this now Christian land. He was not the first English clergyman who ever preached the Gospel or celebrated the Holy Communion in North-America; that honor fell to Wolfall, in 1578, on the shores of Newfoundland or Labrador. He was not the first English clergyman in the United States; for Hunt had already begun his pastoral office on the banks of the James. He was not even the first Christian teacher within the limits of Maine; for L'Escarbot, a Huguenot, had instructed his French associates in 1604, on an island in the St. Croix.

But Seymour was the first preacher of the Gospel in the English tongue, within the borders of New-England, and of the free, loyal and unrevolted portion of these United States. Had he inherited all the honors of his almost royal great-grandfathers, they would have given him a far less noble place than this, in the history of mankind.



## NOTE C.

THE SETTLEMENT OF MAINE BY GOVERNOR GEORGE  
POPHAM, AUGUST, 1607.

BEFORE the Mayflower's lonely sail  
Our northern billows spanned,  
And left on Plymouth's ice-bound rock  
A sad-eyed pilgrim band;

Ere scarce Virginia's forest proud  
The earliest woodman hewed,  
Or gray Powhatan's wondering eyes  
The pale-browed strangers viewed;

The noble Popham's fearless prow  
Essayed adventurous deed;  
He cast upon New-England's coast  
The first colonial seed;

And bade the holy dews of prayer  
Baptize a heathen sod;  
And 'mid the groves a church arose  
Unto the Christian's God.

And here, on green Sabino's marge,  
He closed his mortal trust,  
And gave this savage-peopled world  
Its first rich Saxon dust.

So, where beneath the drifted snows  
He took his latest sleep,  
A faithful sentinel of stone  
Due watch and ward shall keep;

A lofty fort, to men unborn,  
In thunder speak his name,  
And Maine, amid her thousand hills,  
New-England's founder claim.

L. H. SIGOURNEY.

HARTFORD, Ct., Sept. 3, 1862.

## LE SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN.

ONWARD o'er waters which no keel had trod,  
No plummet sounded in their depths below,  
No heaving anchor grappled to the sod  
Where flowers of ocean in seclusion glow;  
From isle to isle, from coast to coast he prest  
With patient zeal and chivalry sublime,  
Folding o'er Terra Incognita's breast  
The lilled vassalage of Gallia's clime.  
Though Henry of Navarre's profound mistake  
Montcalm must expiate and France regret;  
Yet yonder tranquil and heaven-mirrored lake,  
Like diamond in a marge of emerald set,  
Bears on its freshening wave, from shore to shore,  
The baptism of his name till time shall be no more.

HARTFORD, Ct., Oct. 1, 1862.

L. HUNTLEY SIGOURNEY.



## SIR FERDINANDO GORGES.

Nor 'mid Ambition's sterner sons, inspired with restless rage,  
 Whose wreaths of laurel stain with blood the snow of History's page,  
 Nor 'mid those sordid hordes who wrap their souls in cloth of gold,  
 And smother every generous aim in that Laocoon fold;  
 But with the men whom age on age complacently shall view  
 Unostentatious in their course, and like the pole-star true,  
 Who nobly plan, and boldly aid the welfare of their race—  
 Sir Ferdinando Gorges' name shall find an honored place.

On the new Western Continent, his earnest eye was bent,  
 Nor rising cloud, nor rolling storm obscured his large intent;  
 Though Raleigh, that chivalrous friend, upon the scaffold bled,  
 And many an unexpected foe upreared the hydra head;  
 Though adverse fortune ruled, and loss his flowing coffers drained,  
 And monarchs vacillated sore, and parliaments complained;  
 Yet with a persevering zeal that no defeat impaired,  
 When others failed, he onward pressed—where others shrank, he dared.

Then colonizing ships went down beneath the engulfing main,  
 Or on their cargoes fiercely fed the pirate power of Spain,  
 And homeward from their rude abodes the baffled planters steer,  
 Discouraged at the hardships dire that vex the pioneer;  
 The wily Aborigines\* his proffered kindness grieved,  
 And the great Bashaba himself all Christian trust deceived:  
 Still as the beacon rises brave o'er desolation's flood  
 Sir Ferdinando Gorges, firm in faith's endurance stood.

He ne'er beheld New-England's face that woke such life-long toil,  
 Nor traversed with exploring foot his own manorial soil,  
 Nor gazed upon those crested hills where misty shadows glide,  
 Nor heard her thundering rivers rush to swell old ocean's tide,  
 Nor like the seer on Pisgah's cliff one distant glance enjoyed  
 Of those delightful vales that oft his nightly dreams employed;  
 Yet still with deep indwelling thought and fancy's graphic art  
 He bore her strongly-featured scenes depicted on his heart.

She gave him no memorial stone 'mid all her mountains hoar,  
 Nor bade one islet speak his name along her sounding shore,  
 Nor charged a single mirrored lake that o'er her surface spread  
 To keep his image on its wave till gratitude was dead:  
 The woodman in the forest hews, the kingly mast to rear,  
 And forth the fearless vessel goes to earth's remotest sphere;  
 But who of all the mariners upon the watery plain  
 Gives praise to that unswerving knight, who loved the hills of Maine?

HARTFORD, Ct., Nov. 5, 1862.

L. H. S.

\* Some native Indians being brought to England, were kindly received by Sir Ferdinando Gorges into his family, from whom he acquired much information of their country, its scenery and productions. One of them, a native of Martha's Vineyard, named Epinow, artfully invented a story of a mine of gold in that region.

A vessel having been fitted out for the coast of New-England by Sir Ferdinando Gorges and the Earl of Southampton, Epinow went in it, and when it approached his native island leaped into the sea and swam ashore. Soon a shower of arrows from about twenty canoes was discharged on deck, much disconcerting the crew. This expedition, like several other unsuccessful ones, returned without having performed any service adequate to the equipment.





## NOTE D.

## ESTIMATED TERRITORY AND POPULATION OF THE GLOBE.

	Square miles.	Population.
Europe,.....	3,500,000.....	275,000,000
Asia,.....	16,800,000.....	720,000,000
Africa,.....	11,700,000.....	100,000,000
America,.....	16,000,000.....	70,000,000
Oceanica,.....	4,000,000.....	35,000,000
	<u>52,000,000</u>	<u>1,200,000,000</u>

## ENGLISH SPEAKING OR ENGLISH GOVERNED.

	Square miles.	Inhabitants.
United States of America,.....	3,250,000.....	31,445,080
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland,..	122,556.....	29,334,788
British Colonies and Dependencies,.....	8,124,528.....	189,610,665
Total,.....	<u>11,497,084.....</u>	<u>250,390,533</u>

THE FOLLOWING TABLE GIVES IN DETAIL THE  
BRITISH TERRITORY AND POPULATION IN 1861.

COUNTRIES, ETC.	AREA. SQ. M.	POPULATION.	COUNTRIES.	AREA. SQ. M.	POPULATION.
<b>Europe.</b>			Singapore,.....	275	92,749
England,.....	50,922	18,949,930	Native States subordinate		
Wales,.....	7,398	1,111,795	to Bengal,.....	515,535	23,702,206
Scotland,.....	31,324	3,061,251	to Madras,.....	51,809	5,213,671
Ireland,.....	32,518	5,764,542	to Bombay,.....	60,573	4,470,870
Channel Islands:			British India,.....	1,465,331	150,377,143
Man,.....	252	52,339	Ceylon,.....	24,700	1,759,523
Jersey,.....	62	56,078	Labuan,.....	50	1,161
Guernsey, with adjacent			Hong-Kong,.....	29	75,503
Islands,.....	42	29,848	Aden,.....	10	80,000
Alderney,.....	6	4,938	Total in Asia,.....	1,490,120	152,293,242
Sark,.....	2	583	<b>Africa.</b>		
Army, Navy, and Sailors,	..	303,491	Gambia,.....	2,000	5,693
United Kingdom,....	122,556	29,334,788	Sierra Leone,.....	3,000	38,318
Gibraltar,.....	2	17,750	Gold Coast,.....	6,000	151,346
Maltese Islands,.....	115	136,271	Cape Colony,.....	104,921	267,996
Ionian Islands,.....	1,045	229,726	Caffraria,.....	22,000	120,000
Heligoland,.....	5	2,800	Natal,.....	18,000	121,063
Total in Europe,....	123,723	29,721,355	St. Helena,.....	47	5,490
<b>Asia.</b>			Mauritius,.....	708	258,363
Bengal Presidency,.....	221,969	40,582,397	Seychelles,.....	200	8,276
Madras ".....	132,090	22,437,297	Total in Africa,.....	156,576	955,650
Bombay ".....	131,544	11,790,042	<b>Oceanica.</b>		
North-West Provinces, ..	105,759	33,655,193	New South-Wales,.....	356,480	350,553
Punjab,.....	78,535	10,435,710	Victoria,.....	86,910	544,677
As-Sutlej States,.....	8,090	2,282,111	South-Australia,.....	398,880	117,967
Oude,.....	25,000	5,000,000	Western Australia,.....	988,980	14,823
Nagpore or Berar,.....	76,432	4,650,000	Queensland,.....	450,750	30,115
Pegu,.....	32,250	570,180	North-Australia,.....	638,770	6,257
Tenasserim Provinces, ..	29,165	115,431	Australia,.....	2,980,780	1,065,123
East'n Straits Settlements:					
Penang and Wellesley, ..	251	93,688			
Malacca and Nanning, ..	1,049	19,103			



## BRITISH TERRITORY AND POPULATION IN 1861.—Continued.

COUNTRIES.	AREA. SQ. M.	POPULATION.	COUNTRIES.	AREA. SQ. M.	POPULATION.
Tasmania,.....	22,629	89,977	St. Vincent,.....	132	30,123
New-Zealand,.....	95,500	129,477	Tobago,.....	144	16,363
Norfolk Island,.....	18	600	St. Lucia,.....	296	26,471
Auckland Island,.....	500	100	Nevis,.....	21	9,601
Feejee Islands,.....	8,034	133,500	St. Christopher,.....	63	23,177
Total in Oceanica,...	3,107,461	1,413,776	Antigua,.....	108	37,757
<b>America.</b>			Montserrat,.....	47	7,653
Vancouver,.....	12,750	25,000	Virgin Islands,.....	92	6,689
British Columbia,.....	237,250	64,000	Dominica,.....	274	25,230
Hudson Bay Co.'s Ter....	2,250,000	71,000	Barbuda,.....	72	1,707
Labrador,.....	170,000	1,650	Anguilla,.....	34	3,052
Canada West,.....	147,832	1,396,091	West-Indies,.....	15,663	942,245
Canada East,.....	209,990	1,111,566	Guayana:		
New-Brunswick,.....	27,704	252,047	Essequibo,.....	44,000	22,925
Nova Scotia, etc.,.....	18,746	330,699	Berbice,.....	25,000	29,003
Prince Edward,.....	2,134	80,643	Demerara,.....	27,000	75,767
Newfoundland,.....	85,913	122,953	Falkland Islands,.....	6,297	539
Bermuda Islands,.....	19	11,612	South-America,.....	102,297	123,234
Balize, (Honduras,).....	18,600	13,600	Total in America,....	3,368,904	4,556,350
North-America,.....	3,250,944	3,435,571	European,.....	123,723	29,721,355
Bahama Islands,.....	5,094	31,402	Asiatic,.....	1,490,120	182,293,342
Turk's Isl. and the Caicos,	430	4,425	African,.....	156,876	953,650
Jamaica,.....	6,250	411,264	Oceanic,.....	3,107,461	1,418,776
Cayman Islands,.....	260	1,760	American,.....	3,368,904	4,556,350
Trinidad,.....	2,020	73,845	GRAND TOTAL,.....	8,247,034	218,945,433
Barbadoes,.....	166	161,201			
Grenada,.....	155	35,517			

The oldest of the present Colonies of Great Britain is Newfoundland, obtained by settlement in 1608; Bermuda was obtained in 1609; St. Christopher, in 1623; Barbadoes, in 1625; Nevis, in 1628; Bahamas, in 1629; Gambia, in 1631; and Antigua, in 1632. There are fifty distinct colonial governments over the British possessions.

## NOTE E.

From the N. Y. Christian Times of Nov. 20, 1862.

## THE POPHAM CELEBRATION.

## ACTION OF THE NEW-YORK HISTORICAL SOCIETY.

Among the pleasing incidents not remotely connected with the meeting of the General Convention, was the gathering of a number of the members of that body, both clerical and lay, of acknowledged interest in historical pursuits, at the October meeting of the New-York Historical Society, to notice appropriately the late celebration of the Popham settlement at the mouth of the Kennebec. Invitations were extended by the courtly and accomplished President of the New-York Historical Society, the Hon. Luther Bradish, in behalf of the Society, to a number of the Bishops, to the delegation from the Diocese of Maine, and to several prominent members of the Maine and Massachusetts Historical Societies at that time in New-York, to be present on this interesting occasion. The invitation was very generally responded to; and, among others, the Rev. James Craik, D.D., of Kentucky, President of the House of Clerical and Lay Deputies; the Hon. R. C. Winthrop, President of the Massachusetts Historical Society; Prof.



Shattuck, of Boston; the Rev. Dr. Edson, of Lowell; the Hon. John A. Poor, and the Rev. William Stevens Perry, of Portland, members of the Maine Historical Society, were received by a large and brilliant assembly, consisting of prominent historical and literary characters of New-York and vicinity, in the elegant hall of the Society, on Second Avenue.

After the paper of the evening was read, the Hon. Luther Bradish, President of the Society, said, that in reporting upon the miscellaneous business of the Society, it was his pleasing duty to refer to an interesting event that had taken place during the vacation—the celebration in Maine of the founding of the English race in the New World. In many particulars, this celebration was one of the most memorable and successful historical commemorations that had yet taken place. On the Peninsula of Sabino, at the mouth of the ancient Sagadahoc, the modern Kennebec river, in the State of Maine, the two hundred and fifty-fifth anniversary of the founding of the first English colony on the shores of New-England was celebrated on the 29th of August, 1862, at which, after the use of the old words of prayer and praise of the English Prayer-Book of that time, an eloquent and appropriate oration, with speeches, was delivered, and other proceedings took place, at the erection of a monumental stone in the walls of Fort Popham. The New-York Historical Society, through its President, was honored with an invitation to participate in that celebration. Absence from home prevented his receiving the invitation in time to be present, had his health permitted. He had replied in what he trusted were appropriate terms. He was glad to know that other members of this Society had responded for our city and State. He regretted that we had not been able to do full justice to our sense of obligation to our sister Society in Maine. He trusted the Society would in some form take notice of it in an appropriate manner.

The Hon. George Folsom, a son of Maine, and well known as the learned historian of one of Maine's cradle homes of civilization and Episcopacy, rose, and said he fully sympathized in all that had fallen from the President; he regretted that absence in Canada, with his family, prevented his acceptance, in person, of the honor done him by an invitation. He asked leave to introduce the following resolution:

*Resolved*, That the New-York Historical Society has observed with pleasure the efforts of the Historical Society of Maine to perpetuate the earliest history of their State, by associating important historic events with the great works of national defence of the United States Government; that they acknowledge with satisfaction the courtesy extended by the Historical Society and citizens of Maine, inviting the Society and its officers to participate in the commemorative celebration of the founding of the first colony on the shores of New-England, on the two hundred and fifty-fifth anniversary of that event, on the 29th of August, 1862, at which time a memorial stone was placed in the walls of Fort Popham commemorating the establishment of the first Protestant civil government on the shores of New-England; that this Society cordially approves the act of its President, in his reply to the invitation to participate in that celebration, and the goodwill therein expressed; that all such efforts to preserve and illustrate the history of our race in the new world are worthy of general notice."

The Hon. J. Romeyn Brodhead said he seconded the resolution with great pleasure. He was pleased further to learn that several members of the Maine Historical Society had honored our meeting by their presence this evening, as had the President of the Historical Society of Massachusetts. Among others from Maine, the orator of the Popham Celebration, the Hon. Mr. Poor, was present, and he trusted this resolution would be adopted and that Mr. Poor would be called on to favor us with some reply thereto.

The resolution was unanimously adopted. In reply to a call from the





President, Mr. Poor said his associates of the Maine Historical Society and other friends from Maine present, with himself, felt personally complimented by the action here taken, in reference to the Popham Celebration. He rose with a feeling of embarrassment to return thanks for this cordial and unlooked for compliment. He doubted not that the Historical Society of Maine would, in its own befitting manner, return appropriate acknowledgments for this generous courtesy on the part of the New-York Historical Society.

The Popham Celebration, so courteously alluded to, had already borne fruits, in awakened attention to the study of the early history of the country, and we are largely indebted to eminent historical minds of New-York for much of the interest already attached to it. The fact so happily alluded to by your own historian, Mr. Brodhead, the political connection between New-York and Maine under the charter of Charles II., in his most interesting and appropriate reply to the invitation to speak for *the great metropolis of the New World*, cannot fail to excite a feeling of mutual sympathy, at this day, with the more recent but increasing commercial intimacy of the two States. It is certainly refreshing to revive and recall, for this brief hour, the kindly intercourse of other days. It is a fact, almost forgotten, even by the active men of this time, that much the largest portion of Maine was at one time under the same government as that of New-York, and that Gyles Goddard, the renowned representative from *Pemaquid*, sat in the Legislature of New-York in 1684, chosen by the free-holders of the county of Cornwall, in ancient Sagadahoc. This letter of Mr. Brodhead, already published in the Maine papers, will be preserved in our memorial volume as one of the choicest of the many interesting contributions to its pages. The courteous and appropriate letter of your President is already published in the papers of Maine.

One from the Hon. Mr. Bancroft, the most eminent of living American historians, and another from one of Maine's honored sons, Mr. Folsom, are promised for this volume. Mr. Folsom's invaluable labors in bringing to light and preserving the earliest history of his native State, have been publicly acknowledged by formal resolutions of the Maine Historical Society.

New-York, therefore, will have a foremost position, if not, in fact, the post of honor, in the records of that commemorative festival.

That celebration was well calculated to attract attention, for in its purpose it appeals at once to the sympathy of all who speak the English language, or share in any proper measure a feeling of pride at the achievements of our race. It had for its object the due observance of the great fact, the planting of our race in North-America, with the language, literature, laws, and religion of England, an event, if rightly comprehended in its relations and consequences, of as much importance as any one that has taken place since the establishment of the Roman Empire.

Eight years before the Leyden Church had been gathered in Holland, under the charge of the pious Robinson, twenty years before they set foot on Plymouth sands, the purpose of "planting colonies in the north-west of North-America" had been set forth in a paper on file in the British State Paper Office. More than thirteen years prior to the voyage of the May Flower, the title of Old England to New England had been secured by a formal act of possession and occupation at the mouth of the Sagadahoc by Governor Popham's colony.\* No Frenchman ever set foot on the Atlantic

\* The Seven Articles of the Leyden Flock, signed by Robinson and Brewster, sent to King James before their departure from Holland, signifying their full assent to the authority of the English Church, form a striking contrast to their subsequent pretensions, under the guidance of such men as Bradford and Winslow. See Poor's *Vindication of Gorges*, p. 108, for this remarkable document in full.





shore, claiming title west of the Kennebec, after the planting of Popham's colony in 1607.

The Colonial Empire of Great Britain, the wonder of this age, had its root in the charter of April tenth, 1606, and its development in the New-England charter of 1620, both granted on the petitions of Sir Ferdinando Gorges. The great idea of a strong central government, having extended dominions in distant lands, divided into separate provinces, communities, and states, each enjoying equal and just laws, suited to the local wants of each, fully developed in action under the rule of Cromwell, originated in an earlier day, and in the mind of him who secured those great charters, and maintained them till the soil of the New World was planted with our race, where it has gradually advanced toward universal dominion.

The failure of Sir Humphrey Gilbert, of Sir Walter Raleigh, and of Sir Richard Grenville to comprehend the geographical and commercial laws that control the destiny of races and of empires, imposed on Sir Ferdinando Gorges, or rather left to him, the task of occupying the continent of North-America, from the fortieth to the forty-eighth parallel of north latitude, in which limits, in spite of individual jealousy and parliamentary injustice, he achieved the great work of English colonization in America. In their zeal against monopolies, in 1621 and 1622, the Commons of England declared "*fishing is of more value than plantations in America*," and would have abandoned the continent to the French but for the pertinacity, foresight, and enlightened views of Gorges, and his favor with the King, from the possession of these great qualities.

But the chief significance of the Popham Celebration, undoubtedly, is the introduction of a new principle in the naming of our forts, making them serve the double purpose of national defence and of preserving the memory of the great events in our history.

We have seen the national honor tarnished, and the moral sense of the nation shocked, by the bestowal of unworthy names—names of mere partisan leaders—upon national vessels, forts, and other public works. This form of coarse flattery panders to the lower tastes of men and destroys the independence of official men, who are made the recipients of it.

It was, therefore, with a feeling of relief that Gen. Totten was pleased to accept the proposal of affixing to the great work in Portland harbor the name of Fort Gorges, in honor of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, the father of English colonization in America, and naming the new work at the mouth of the Sagadahoc or Kennebec Fort Popham, in a similar spirit, and we hope to see this rule made universal. Especially do we look forward to the construction of a new fort, to guard the entrance to Portland harbor, to be named Fort Gosnold, and placed on the shore of Cape Elizabeth, the first point of the northern main of New-England, touched by that great English navigator, who has left on record the details of his discovery of the New-England coast in 1602.

The fitness of the policy proposed will be readily appreciated by all men endowed with any share of that quality we call the historic sense; for all know that the reputation of no public man is secure within the first hundred years after his death. Personal ambition, partisan motives, and narrow views characterize the popular movements of every age—our own as of all past ones—and the value of no man's life can be justly measured in his own time. We build monuments, we name towns, cities, and counties, for men that a future age will hold in disfavor. We almost execrate the memory of men to-day, that a later time shall honor. We rear in affected grandeur an obelisk in devotion to the demon of war, that the calmer reason of the coming centuries will demolish or condemn. We do homage to popular partisan leaders to-day, whose doctrines have undermined the foundations of our Government and brought upon us civil war.



Thanks to the good sense of the people of the Empire State, they have preserved the name of their great navigator, Hudson, from any possibility of forgetfulness or decay, by affixing it to the great *river of the mountains* that must forever bear to this great metropolis the treasures of an expanding commerce with the interior.

Looking back to the first dawns of American history, we are beginning to discover the superior lustre of the great lights that guided hitherward the adventurous and heroic spirits of that great age. Under their benignant glow we revisit the spots made sacred by self-denying labors. We hope to strengthen our love of what is noble and heroic by an annual pilgrimage to that spot where, in prayer and faith, the foundations of empire in the New World were laid.

Associating the history of Maine with New-York, so appropriately done by Mr. Brodhead, may serve to increase your interest in our State. Maine—so rich in historic interest, so full of legendary romance, so marked by the fascinations of its scenery,\* the territory claimed by the great European powers, Spain, Holland, France, and England; the home of the earliest French settlers and of the first English colonists; the *Norumbega* of Milton's *Paradise Lost*, the *Mavosheen* of Purchase's strange narration; "discovered by the English in 1602, '3, '5, '6, '7, '8, and '9;" the *New-England* of John Smith in 1614, and of later times—obeys the law of historic as of commercial gravitation and gladly finds sympathy, "without reservation," in the great metropolis of the Western World.

Maine, too, builds the ships that fill the docks of the East River and the Hudson. She lifts from her quarries the granite columns that form the ornaments and support of your public edifices, and the rich colonnades and solid walls of the Treasury Extension at Washington. She needs, most of all, the pen of the historian and the pencil of the painter, to be made as familiar as household words in the private residences of the Fifth Avenue and Madison Square, by means of landscapes that shall equal in beauty the richest scenery of the Rhine and the Alps; true to nature from the seashores, the valleys, and the mountains of Maine. With her summer retreats thus laid open, she shall annually attract pleasure tourists of other lands than our own.

Rejoicing in the success of your Society, and grateful for your generous courtesy, I may be allowed to close, as I began, by expressing for our Society and its members, here present, the assurance of our hearty thanks.

\* "We, Americans, neglecting both the surpassing magnificence—nay, often sublimity—and the rare loveliness of various districts of our own Continent, wander forth across the seas, to seek, at great expense, and amid physical and moral dangers, scenery in foreign lands, which falls short of the attractions of much we possess at home. Thus, how few are alive to the glorious and varied beauty of that zone of islands, which, commencing with the perfection of Casco Bay, terminates with the precipitous, seal-frequented shores of Grand-Menan, at the entrance of the Bay of Fundy. Of all the Archipelagoes sung by the poet, described by the historian, and depicted by the painter, there is none which can exceed, in its union of charms, those two hundred miles of intermingling land and ocean, where, lost in each other's embrace, the sea seems in love with the land, and the shore with the foam-frosted waves!"—*General J. Watts de Peyster's Dutch in Maine*, p. 44.

F841.7

5990H









